

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OU_150937

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

Latin and Greek
in
Current Use

PRENTICE-HALL CLASSICS SERIES
CASPER J. KRAEMER, JR., PH.D., EDITOR

Latin and Greek
in
Current Use

by

Eli E. Burriss, Ph. D.

*Associate Professor of Classics
Washington Square College
New York University*

and

Lionel Casson, Ph. D.

*Instructor in Classics
Washington Square College
New York University*

New York
Prentice-Hall, Inc.

COPYRIGHT, 1939, BY
PRENTICE-HALL, INC.
70 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. NO PART OF THIS BOOK
MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY FORM, BY MIMEO-
GRAPH OR ANY OTHER MEANS, WITHOUT PER-
MISSION IN WRITING FROM THE PUBLISHERS.

First Printing September 1939
Second Printing August 1940
Third Printing June 1942
Fourth Printing November 1944
Fifth Printing May 1945
Sixth Printing October 1945
Seventh Printing July 1946
Eighth Printing December 1946
Ninth Printing July 1947

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Preface

This book is the outgrowth of a demand for a course that would subserve the interests of students who, in spite of an indisposition to take formal courses in ancient languages, have a desire to know something of the Greek and Latin elements in their native tongue.

The material of the book has, in general, been made to conform to *Webster's Collegiate Dictionary* (Fifth Edition, 1938). For those who prefer other standard dictionaries, such as the *Concise Oxford Dictionary*, notes explaining the divergences from Webster's practice have been introduced at appropriate places.

Further information about the content and purpose of the course will be found in the Introduction to Chapter I and in the Instructions on Procedure.

We are indebted to our colleagues in the Classics Department of the Washington Square College for having saved us from many blunders, but we hold ourselves liable for any slips and infelicities that may still mar the book. To Miss Frieda Agin, we express our thanks for valuable assistance in compiling the General Vocabularies.

E. E. B.

L. C.

Contents

	PAGE
INSTRUCTIONS ON PROCEDURE	xiii
BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTICE	xv

PART ONE

LATIN

CHAPTER

I. LATIN AND ENGLISH	3
Introduction	3
Linguistic Relationship Between Latin and English	4
Latin Element in English	6
Historical Contact Between Latin and English	7
Roman Invasions and the Occupation of Britain.	
Anglo-Saxon Invasions. Introduction of Roman Christianity. Norman Conquest. Old French Period. Revival of Learning.	
II. LATIN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	17
Lesson 1. Nouns of the First Declension, Borrowed Without Change	19
2. Nouns of the First Declension, Anglicized	23
3. Nouns of the First Declension, Anglicized (<i>Concl'd</i>)	26
4. The Second Declension: Masculine Nouns	29
5. The Second Declension: Neuter Nouns	33
6. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, Borrowed Without Change	37
7. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, Anglicized. Specialization and Generalization of Meaning	41
8. Nouns of the Third Declension, Borrowed Without Change	45

CONTENTS

ER	PAGE
LATIN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (<i>Cont'd</i>):	
9. Nouns of the Third Declension, Angli- cized.	49
10. Adjectives of the Third Declension. Comparison of Adjectives.	52
11. Nouns of the Fourth and Fifth Declen- sions. Adverbs.	56
12. Review.	60
COMPOUND NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.	63
Lesson 13. Compound Adjectives: Noun or Ad- jective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix.	65
14. Compound Adjectives: Noun or Ad- jective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix (<i>Cont'd</i>).	68
15. Compound Adjectives: Noun or Ad- jective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix (<i>Cont'd</i>).	71
16. Compound Adjectives: Noun or Ad- jective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix (<i>Concl'd</i>).	75
17. Prefixes.	79
18. Compound Nouns: Noun Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix.	82
19. Compound Nouns: Noun Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix (<i>Concl'd</i>); Ad- jective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix	86
20. Compound Nouns: Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix (<i>Concl'd</i>); Noun or Adjective Base Plus Noun- Forming Suffix.	90
21. Multiple-Base Compounds: Descrip- tive Compounds. Latin Numerals. . .	93
22. Review.	98

CONTENTS

ix

CHAPTER	PAGE
IV. LATIN VERBS	103
Lesson 23. The Present Infinitive and the Perfect Participle	104
24. The Present Infinitive and the Perfect Participle in English. Denominative Verbs	106
25. Prefixes	111
26. Deponent Verbs. Prefixes (<i>Cont'd</i>)	115
27. Prefixes (<i>Concl'd</i>). Derivative Nouns	119
28. Frequentative Verbs. Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds	124
29. Review	129
30. The Present Participle	132
31. The Present Participle in English (<i>Concl'd</i>)	136
32. Inceptive Verbs. Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>)	140
33. The Gerundive	143
V. COMPOUND NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES FORMED FROM VERBS	147
Lesson 34. Compound Nouns: Present-Infinitive or Perfect-Participial Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix. Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>)	147
35. Compound Nouns: Present-Infinitive Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix	152
36. Compound Nouns: Perfect-Participial Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix. Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>)	155
37. Compound Adjectives: Present-Infinitive or Perfect-Participia Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix; Present-Infinitive Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix	158

CHAPTER	PAGE
V. COMPOUND NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES FORMED FROM VERBS (<i>Cont'd</i>):	
38. Compound Adjectives: Perfect-Participial Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix. Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (<i>Concl'd</i>)	162
39. Review.....	166
LATIN PRONUNCIATION.....	169
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	173
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.....	181

PART TWO

GREEK

I. INTRODUCTION.....	187
The Greek Alphabet.....	190
Diphthongs.....	191
Breathings.....	191
Transliteration.....	191
II. GREEK NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.....	195
Lesson 1. The First Declension. Multiple-Base Compounds.....	195
2. The First Declension (<i>Concl'd</i>). Multiple-Base Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>) ..	199
3. The Second Declension. Multiple-Base Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>)	202
4. The Second Declension (<i>Concl'd</i>). Multiple-Base Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>)	206
5. The Third Declension.....	208
6. The Third Declension (<i>Cont'd</i>). Multiple-Base Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>)	211
7. The Third Declension (<i>Concl'd</i>)	213
8. Greek Adjectives.....	215
9. Greek Numerals.....	218
10. Review.....	220

CONTENTS

xi

CHAPTER	PAGE
III. COMPOUND WORDS.....	223
Lesson 11. Compound Nouns: Noun or Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix. Pre- fixes.....	223
12. Prefixes (<i>Cont'd</i>). Multiple-Base Com- pounds (<i>Cont'd</i>).....	227
13. Prefixes (<i>Concl'd</i>).....	229
14. Compound Nouns: Noun or Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix (<i>Concl'd</i>).....	232
15. Compound Adjectives and Verbs. Multiple-Base Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>)..	235
16. Review.....	239
IV. GREEK VERBS.....	243
Lesson 17. Verb Bases. Compound Verbs.....	243
18. Greek Verbs in English. Multiple- Base Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>).....	246
19. Compound Nouns Formed From Verbs. Multiple-Base Compounds (<i>Cont'd</i>).....	250
20. Compound Nouns Formed From Verbs (<i>Cont'd</i>).....	254
21. Compound Nouns Formed From Verbs (<i>Concl'd</i>). Multiple-Base Com- pounds (<i>Concl'd</i>).....	257
22. Compound Adjectives Formed From Verbs. Verbal Adjectives.....	260
23. Review.....	264
GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	269
ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY.....	277
INDEX.....	281

Instructions on Procedure

Each lesson is divided into four parts: (1) Exposition; (2) Exercises; (3) Supplementary Notes; and (4) Illustrative Sentences. In addition, a few Review Lessons are to be found throughout the book.

EXPOSITION

The expository material has been treated under two heads: (a) a study of the etymological problem or problems selected for the particular lesson; and (b) Examples. A Special Vocabulary containing Latin or Greek words with their meanings is frequently added.

Instructions:

1. The student should make a careful study of all matters treated in the Exposition.

2. Using the dictionary, the student should determine the pronunciation, the current meaning, and the etymological meaning (when we do not give this meaning) of each English loan word appearing in the Examples.

3. All prefixes and suffixes, and the Latin or Greek words listed in the Special Vocabularies, must be memorized with their meanings. As many English words as possible should be formed from the words listed in the Special Vocabularies, following the principles set forth and illustrated in the Exposition (a) and (b); their pronunciation and current meaning should be determined from the dictionary. Occasionally, the number of English words to be formed by the student will be specified; occasionally, he will be instructed to apply certain principles in addition to those already developed in the particular lesson.

EXERCISES

The Exercises consist, in general, of the following types of questions, in this order: (a) etymological analyses of Words

for Special Study; (b) General Vocabulary Study (in Chapter II of the Latin, Chapter II of the Greek) and Word Formation (beginning with Chapter III of the Latin); (c) Synonyms and Antonyms; and (d) Miscellaneous Questions. Specific questions are occasionally asked in connection with (a) and (b).

Instructions:

1. *Words for Special Study:* The student should determine from his dictionary the etymology, pronunciation, and current meaning of each of these words, and use such words as the instructor may direct in sentences which clearly illustrate their correct meaning and application.

2. *General Vocabulary Study:* Under this head, the student is asked to find a specified number of English loan words from the class of Latin or Greek words under discussion. He should find these loan words by applying the principles, set forth in the particular lesson, to the Latin or Greek words in the General Vocabularies. Using the dictionary, he should then determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each.

Word Formation: Under this head is given a list of "etymological meanings." From these, using the expository material provided in the lesson and the English-Latin or English-Greek General Vocabularies at the end of each section, the student should form English words. He should then determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each word from the dictionary.

3. *Synonyms and Antonyms:* Under this head, we have placed a list of English words from which, with the aid of the dictionary, the student is to choose pairs of synonyms and antonyms. It is suggested that the student determine the shades of difference in meaning between these and use such words as the instructor may direct in sentences which clearly indicate these differences.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The Supplementary Notes are calculated to arouse the interest of the student in making further studies in the subject. In these notes will be found curious word histories,

studies of words of French origin (a complete treatment of which is not within the province of the course), and other etymological matters that may serve to relieve the monotony of mechanical word study.

Instructions:

The instructor may, according to the time at his disposal, assign to the student for study all, or part, of the matters discussed.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

The Illustrative Sentences have been divided into two groups: (a) those which are genuinely illustrative, in which something of the meaning of the word has been revealed; and (b) those which show the correct use of the word without expressly revealing its meaning.

Instructions:

It is suggested that the student be required to form sentences of his own, using group (a) of the Illustrative Sentences as a guide. With respect to group (b), the student should be required:

1. To find in the sentence the word that illustrates the principles discussed in the particular lesson.
2. To determine the meaning in its context of those words which have already appeared in the particular lesson.
3. To determine the pronunciation, etymology, and meaning in its context of those words which illustrate the principles discussed in the Exposition but have not appeared in the particular lesson.

A large proportion of the sentences have been chosen from or based on sentences excerpted from the works of Lamb, Hazlitt, Emerson, H. M. Tomlinson, Santayana, George Moore, Stevenson, Chesterfield, Gissing, Lafcadio Hearn, and others; some have been recast from dictionary illustrations and from sentences taken from the daily press; others are frankly impromptu.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTICE

The student should have in his possession one of the following dictionaries:

Webster's Collegiate Dictionary, Fifth Edition (G. and C. Merriam Company).

The Concise Oxford Dictionary (Oxford University Press).

Access should be had to the following works:

A Dictionary of Modern English Usage, by H. W. Fowler (Oxford University Press).

A History of Foreign Words in English, by Mary S. Serjeantson (E. P. Dutton and Company).

A History of the English Language, by Albert C. Baugh (D. Appleton-Century Company).

Language and Its Growth, by Scott-Carr-Wilkinson (Scott, Foresman and Company).

Language and Philology, by Roland G. Kent (Longmans, Green and Company).

Latin Words of Common English, by E. L. Johnson (D. C. Heath and Company).

Words and Their Ways in English Speech, by J. B. Greenough and G. L. Kittredge (The Macmillan Company).

PART ONE

LATIN

CHAPTER I

Latin and English

Introduction

The English language consists of two main groups of words: (a) Anglo-Saxon words, which are the oldest and the basic words of the language, and (b) words borrowed from Greek and Latin, which bulk large in the literature and speech of cultured people. In addition to these main groups, English contains many words borrowed from other languages. For example, *cot* and *loot* are ultimately derived from Hindu, *cotton* from Arabic, *candy* and *lilac* from Persian, *tea* from Chinese, *paprika* from Hungarian. We use each of these words almost every day, yet few of us are acquainted with their origin, the manner in which they entered our language, and the way in which each word received its current meaning. The language we speak is so intimate a part of our experience that we take it for granted, and fail to give it the attention and study it deserves.

English words have a long history behind them. The understanding of the peculiar flavor of words is impossible without some knowledge of their source and original meaning and the elements that compose them. Furthermore, the study of word-history sheds light on the pronunciation and spelling of many English words.

A study of all the words in the English vocabulary, desirable as it may be, is manifestly impossible in a book of this

sort. We must restrict ourselves to words of Latin and Greek origin. Moreover, since English has many more words of Latin than of Greek origin and since Latin has had a marked influence on the form of Greek-derived words, English words of Latin origin claim our attention first.

The Linguistic Relationship Between Latin and English

For the study of Latin words in English, a proper understanding of the fundamental linguistic relationship between the two languages is necessary. That the two are related is manifest. Thus, the English numeral *six* resembles the Latin **sex**, *mother* **māter**, *father* **pater**, *brother* **frāter**. These examples could be multiplied many times. The explanation of the similarity lies in the fact that both languages are members of the same family of languages, the "Indo-European Family."

On the basis of a study and comparison of extant languages, scholars have inferred that about 3000 B.C. there existed in the region of the Black and Caspian Seas a tribe which, for lack of a better name, they call the "Indo-Europeans." This tribe, they tell us, spread in all directions, conquering as it went, and bringing its language, called "Indo-European," into the lands it conquered. The subject peoples adopted the language, and gradually, in separate localities, dialects of the original tongue arose. Over a period of years, these dialects became more and more divorced from the mother tongue and from each other, until finally they developed into distinct daughter languages. For example, the Indo-Europeans penetrated into the Italian peninsula and introduced their language to the inhabitants. Gradually the type of Indo-European spoken there developed certain characteristics. With the

passing of time, these characteristics became intensified, until finally a distinct language, Latin, was formed. A similar development gave rise to Greek in the Hellenic peninsula, Sanskrit in India, and so on. So extensive was the territory under the sway of the Indo-Europeans that practically all the languages of Europe and many of those of Asia have descended from the tongue of these conquering invaders. The following chart illustrates the most important branches of the Indo-European family and the important daughter tongues that are included in each.

- I. Indo-Iranic: Sanskrit and later vernaculars
(Hindu, Bengali, etc.), Persian
- II. Armenic: Armenian
- III. Albanic: Albanian
- IV. Hellenic: Ancient Greek, Modern Greek
- V. Italic: *Latin* which, in turn, is the ancestor of the Romance languages: Roumanian, *Italian*, Provençal-Catalan, *French*, *Spanish*, Portuguese
- VI. Celtic: Welsh, Irish, Scotch Gaelic, Breton
- VII. Germanic: Gothic, Swedish-Danish, Norwegian-Icelandic, *English*, Dutch-Flemish, German
- VIII. Balto-Slavic: Lithuanian, Lettish, Bulgarian, Serbo-Croatian, Slovene, Russian, Polish, Czech (Bohemian), Slovak

The development of the various Indo-European languages which we have just sketched is closely paralleled by the development of the Romance languages from Latin at a much later date. By the first century A. D., Rome had conquered all the Mediterranean world, France, Spain, and Britain, and had introduced Latin to all her subjects. The Latin which these subjects spoke was not the pure tongue that Caesar, Cicero, and Vergil used, but a colloquial form which we term "Vulgar Latin." Gradually,

Vulgar Latin broke up in different localities into several dialects, which ultimately developed into the separate tongues known as the Romance languages—namely, Roumanian, Italian, Provençal-Catalan, French, Spanish, and Portuguese.

The linguistic relationship between Latin and English should now be clear: they are both Indo-European languages, both daughter tongues of the same mother tongue. The reason for the similarity between many native English and Latin words is that they are *cognate*—that is, the two descended from the same word in the mother tongue. For example, *mother* is cognate with **māter**, since both are ultimately descended from the Indo-European word **mātē(r)*; *father* with **pater**, since both come ultimately from the Indo-European **pātē(r)*.

The Latin Element in English

It is not our purpose to study the English words which are cognate with Latin words. The study of *cognates* is the concern of the student of comparative linguistics. The material of our study consists of the mass of Latin words which have been *borrowed* by English.

Like any other language, English consists, first, of a group of *inheritance words*, that is, words which had come down from the mother tongue, Indo-European. These are the Anglo-Saxon words mentioned in the Introduction. English increased and has continued to increase this nucleus by borrowing words from those languages with which, through commerce, war, literary intercourse, and the like, she has come in contact. Thus, association with the American Indians enriched the English vocabulary with such words as *skunk*, *toboggan*, *tepee*, *opossum*; the World War brought in its wake a flood of French words; and scien-

tists are still plundering the resources of Greek and Latin for technical terms. With no language, however, has English had so long and so close a contact as with Latin. Latin, consequently, became the prime source of her borrowings. It is to this association, lasting for more than 1,500 years, that we must now direct our attention.

The Historical Contact Between Latin and English

The Roman Invasions and the Occupation of Britain. At the time when the Romans came in direct contact with the inhabitants of Britain, the people they encountered were Celts, whose language still survives in modified form in parts of Ireland and Wales, the mountains of Scotland, and in Brittany. Having completed his conquest of Gaul (including modern France), Julius Caesar, who was at the time governor of that province, decided to invade Britain (55 B. C.). After meeting stubborn resistance, he defeated the Britons in battle, made peace with them, and sailed back to Gaul. The following summer (54 B. C.), with a larger force, Caesar again invaded the island; and while he defeated the Britons in several battles and demanded tribute, he returned to Gaul without any material gain, for the tribute was never paid.

It was not until about 100 years later (43 A. D.) that the conquest of the island began in earnest in the reign of Emperor Claudius. Claudius dispatched a large army to Britain. Within a period of three years, the southeastern and central parts had been brought under Roman domination. Under a succession of Roman governors—of whom the most notable was Agricola, governor from 77 or 78 to 83 or 84 A. D.—the frontiers were pushed steadily northward until, under Agricola, they reached the Tyne and

Solway, the northern limits of the Roman conquest. The invaders made no effort to pass beyond the mountainous districts of Wales and Scotland. They subsequently constructed a wall across the northern frontier, and for 300 years the region to the south remained under Roman sway. Here they built roads, towns, and even a few theaters. The Romans abandoned the island in 410 A. D., called away by the necessity of turning back the hordes of barbarians that were threatening southern Europe.

So long an occupation of the island by the Romans naturally had some effect on the language of the natives. Certainly Latin was the official language, for inscriptions of a public character have been found written in Latin. The people of the towns and cities and probably the well-to-do landowners in the country districts spoke Latin, and there is some evidence that Latin was known to the artisan class. Its effect on the language of the people—Celtic—was, however, slight in comparison with that left by the Germanic invaders who came to the island about 50 years after the withdrawal of the Romans. Such Latin words as came into the language at this time were chiefly military and trade terms. Among the words which the Britons may have borrowed from the Roman invaders are the following:

LATIN	ANGLO-SAXON	MODERN ENGLISH
<i>mīlia</i> (<i>passuum</i>) 'thousands of paces,' 'miles' [singular, <i>mīlle passuum</i> 'a thousand paces,' 'a mile' (1,618 yards)]	<i>mīl</i>	<i>mile</i>
<i>castra</i> plural of <i>castrum</i> 'fort'	<i>ċeaster</i> 'city'	- <i>chester</i> (cf. <i>Rochester</i> , <i>Winchester</i> , etc.)

The Anglo-Saxon Invasions. In order to understand the influence of Latin on English, we shall have to go back

to a period before the invasion of Britain by the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes, collectively known as the Anglo-Saxons. The northern legions of the Roman armies, from the time that Julius Caesar established a Roman province near the Rhine, contained many soldiers of Nordic tribes. These soldiers naturally became familiar with Latin military terms and with the names of many objects used by the Romans in camp and town, and introduced them into their own native dialects. These words were of course borrowed, not from Classical Latin, but from Vulgar Latin. While Britain had been harassed by Germanic tribes before, the great invasion by the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes began about 449 A. D., and for more than 100 years bands of people from the region of Denmark or Western Germany poured into Britain, occupying the whole of the island except the northern and western highlands, either forcing out the native Britons or making slaves of them. The Germanic dialect which these invaders spoke on the continent became the language of Britain and developed into the English of today. They brought with them those words of Latin origin which they had borrowed on the continent, where they had come in contact with Roman soldiers and traders. The native Britons also, during the more than 400 years of Roman occupation, had naturally borrowed some Latin words (e.g., *mile* and *-chester*, already mentioned). It is not possible, however, to determine with any degree of certainty which Latin words appearing in English at the time were borrowed from the Roman invaders of Britain and which were brought in by the Anglo-Saxons from the continent. Thus, the Anglo-Saxons may have borrowed on the continent the noun *street*, which appears in Anglo-Saxon as *stræet* and comes from the Latin *strāta* (*via*) 'paved (road),' used specifically of a military road. However, the word may have come

into English with the Roman occupation of Britain, as the Romans constructed such roads also in Britain.

The following illustrative loan words probably came into England with the Anglo-Saxon invasion. That the invaders borrowed these words from the Latins on the continent is evidenced by the fact that forms corresponding to these exist in other Germanic dialects and by the fact that they do not show the changes that would have occurred had they come into English through Old French at a later time. There is always the possibility, of course, that the Britons were already familiar with the words from the time of the Roman Conquest.

LATIN	ANGLO-SAXON	MODERN ENGLISH
vāllum 'wall set with palisades'	<i>weall</i>	<i>wall</i>
calx 'stone,' 'lime'	<i>cealc</i>	<i>chalk</i>
postis 'pillar'	<i>post</i>	<i>post</i>
vīnum 'wine'	<i>wīn</i>	<i>wine</i>
pix 'pitch'	<i>pic</i>	<i>pitch</i>

The Introduction of Roman Christianity. Many Greek and Latin words came into English in the wake of St. Augustine, whom Pope Gregory the Great sent as a missionary to Britain with about 40 monks in 597 (not to be confused with St. Augustine of Hippo, author of *The Confessions* and *The City of God*). The Christian Church had already been established in Kent. Aethelberht, King of Kent, welcomed St. Augustine, and within three months was baptized in the Christian faith. At St. Augustine's death, seven years later, the whole of Kent, and within 100 years after Augustine's coming, all England had embraced Christianity. Churches and monasteries were built, schools established, and the use of Latin, the official language of the Church, spread considerably. The result was a large

influx of loan words having to do with religious matters. Since the Church was in origin a Greek institution, many of these go back ultimately to Greek.

Following are a few of the loan words which were borrowed after the coming of Augustine:

GREEK	LATIN	ANGLO-SAXON	MODERN ENGLISH
<i>monachós</i> 'monk'	<i>monachus</i> (<i>monicus</i>)	<i>munuc</i>	<i>monk</i>
<i>monastérion</i> 'monastery'	<i>monastērium</i>	<i>mynster</i>	<i>minster</i>
	<i>nonna</i> 'child's nurse,' 'nun'	<i>nunne</i>	<i>nun</i>
<i>pāpas</i> 'father'	<i>pāpa</i>	<i>pāpa</i>	<i>pope</i>
	<i>crēdō</i> 'I believe'	<i>crēda</i>	<i>creed</i>
<i>eleēmosýnē</i> 'compassionateness'	<i>eleēmosyna</i>	<i>aelmysse</i>	<i>alms</i>

The Norman Conquest: The Norman-French or Anglo-French Period. French had somewhat affected the English language prior to the Norman Conquest, but the first great influx of French words of Latin origin began after the conquest of England by the Normans under the Duke of Normandy—William the Conqueror, as he is styled—who defeated and killed the Saxon king, Harold, at Hastings in 1066. Edward the Confessor, who had spent many years in exile at the Norman court of William, his second cousin, assured William that he should succeed him on the English throne; and Edward's logical successor, Harold, had been forced to acquiesce in this decision. In spite of this, the English placed Harold on the throne, and William had to fight to make good his claim.

The Normans (Northmen) were a Danish-speaking people who, on entering France in the ninth and tenth centuries, occupied the region subsequently known as Normandy and adopted the local dialect, which was little more

than a slightly modified Latin. It was this dialect, known as "Norman-French," which the Normans brought to England in the eleventh century. Some words of Latin origin came into English in this way. Previous to the coming of the Normans, the West-Saxon dialect had been the literary language of the island. But with the arrival of the Normans, this dialect lost its preëminence, and Norman-French (or Anglo-French) became the language of the court circle and of cultured people generally. The various dialects of English existed side by side with French for about 200 years without either greatly affecting the other. To be sure, some words were borrowed from Norman-French, but English affected the language of the Normans more than Norman-French affected English. Among the words introduced by the Norman-French at this time were the following:

LATIN	NORMAN-FRENCH	MODERN ENGLISH
caldarium 'hot bath'	caudron	<i>caldron</i>
cancer 'crab,' 'cancer'	cancre	<i>canker</i>
castellum diminutive of castrum 'fort'	castel	<i>castle</i>

Normandy Becomes Independent of England: The Old French Period. Early in the thirteenth century, Normandy became independent of England when, in 1204, King John lost his continental kingdom. The King of France confiscated all his property and, subsequently, the property of many English barons. From that time on, the influence of Norman-French was negligible. In time, the upper classes were speaking French as a cultivated language, not as a language inherited from their Norman ancestors. By the middle of the century, however, English was coming into general use even among the upper classes. In their desire to express themselves in English, they could not find Eng-

lish words adequate for their ideas, and, consequently, borrowed French words. The number of French words adopted by English in this period was considerable. They include words associated with every phase of life. The years 1250 to 1400 marked the period of greatest borrowing.

The Revival of Learning. The direct contact with literary Greek and Latin began with the period of the Tudor Kings (1485 to 1603), a period which was contemporaneous with the Renaissance on the continent. This period was marked by the borrowing of Greek and Latin words either unchanged or only slightly changed in form. The invention of the printing press in Germany about the middle of the fifteenth century and its introduction into England by William Caxton in 1476, the spread of education among the people, and the increased means of communication were a strong fillip to the standardization and unification of the English language, particularly in matters of grammar and usage, and were instrumental in greatly increasing the number of words in the English language. To be sure, the English language had established itself in the literature of the people, but Latin still maintained its traditional place as the language of the cultured group. A stimulus was given to this tradition by the Renaissance, which brought to Europe the writings of Greece and Rome in the original. However, the feeling among the people that they should share in the new knowledge disclosed by the Renaissance led to the making of English translations of classical authors and the writing of books about them. Writers soon realized that the English language, as it existed at the time, was inadequate to express thoughts which Greek and Latin were able to express with so much felicity. Realizing this, translators and other writers borrowed from Greek and Latin the words necessary to express these ideas. Most of the words thus introduced were Latin; but Greek, French

and Italian words were also borrowed. Thus, we have a conscious, studied effort on the part of English writers of the period to enrich the English vocabulary. Such words naturally passed into the written language first; many of them became a part of the spoken language. While the introduction of many Latin words was the result of mere pedantry, in most cases there was a genuine need for new words to express new ideas. The words which proved unnecessary dropped out. It is with these loan words and with words formed by analogy with these that this course is principally concerned.

Not only were words borrowed directly from Latin and Greek at this time, but Latin and Greek elements—prefixes, bases, and suffixes—were used to make up countless other English words. For example, there is no Latin noun **independentia**, but English formed the noun *independence* from Latin elements as though **independentia** had existed in Latin. *Independence* contains two Latin prefixes, a base, and a suffix, and might very well have been formed in Latin by the Romans. [Such combinations will be marked hereafter by an asterisk (e.g., ***independentia**)]. Furthermore, English frequently mingled Latin and English, Greek and English, and Greek and Latin elements in forming English words. For example, the English noun *talkative* consists of an English base *talk-* and the Latin-derived suffix *-ative*; *automobile* consists of the elements *auto-*, which is Greek-derived, and *-mobile* which is Latin-derived. Such words are called *hybrids*.

It often happens that the same Latin word was introduced twice or even three times in English, usually once as a “popular” word and again as a “learned” word. For example, the nouns *dainty* and *dignity* ultimately come from the Latin noun **dignitās**. *Dainty*, however, entered the language through Old French, while *dignity* was bor-

rowed directly from Latin. Such loan words, which go back by different courses to the same word, are called *doublets*.

EXERCISES

1. Read the Explanatory Notes in your dictionary.
2. Look up the nouns *cannon* and *mode* in your dictionary. Determine the meanings of each abbreviation used in the etymological notes.
3. The English noun *father*, Latin *pater*, Greek *patēr*, Sanskrit *pitā* come from the same Indo-European word. Explain the relationship, in terms of "cognates," "loan words," or "inheritance words," of these nouns with their Indo-European ancestor.
4. The English noun *charm* has come into English through Old French *charme* from the Latin noun *carmen*. Explain the relationship between these words in terms of "cognates," "loan words," or "inheritance words."
5. Answer the following questions and state the reasons for your answer:
 - (a) Which words are the oldest words in any given language, inheritance words or loan words?
 - (b) Can a native English word be cognate with a native Russian word; French word; American-Indian word; Hebrew word?
 - (c) Can a native German word be cognate with a native Irish word; Latin word; Arabic word?
6. *Poison* and *potion* are ultimately derived from the same Latin noun *pōtiō* 'drink.' What name do we give to such words?
7. The English noun *martyrdom* consists of a Greek-derived element *martyr-* and an English element *-dom*. What name do we give to such words?
8. Distinguish between "doublets" and "cognates." Give examples of each.
9. In what period was the largest number of words borrowed from Latin?
10. What is the chief difference between the way in which Latin words were borrowed before and after the Revival of Learning?

11. Using the dictionary for each of the following words, *curfew*, *raisin*, *depopulate*, *benefit*, determine:

- (a) In which period each was borrowed by English.
- (b) Through what languages, if any, each passed before reaching English.

CHAPTER II

Latin Nouns and Adjectives

All English nouns have a nominative, a possessive, and an objective case in the singular and plural. For example the noun *boy* has the following cases:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE:	<i>boy</i>	<i>boys</i>
POSSESSIVE:	<i>boy's</i>	<i>boys'</i>
OBJECTIVE:	<i>boy</i>	<i>boys</i>

To form all the cases of a noun is to *decline* the noun. These cases taken together constitute its *declension*.

Latin nouns, too, are declined, but in a much more complicated fashion. Like English nouns, they have a possessive and an objective case, which, following the practice of the Roman grammarians, we call the *genitive* and *accusative*, respectively. Latin has four other cases (nominative, dative, ablative, and vocative) to express different shades of meaning. All are formed by the addition of certain endings to the base of the noun, but these endings, except those of the nominative and genitive, do not concern us in our present studies.

Latin nouns are divided into five groups, according to the way in which they are declined. These groups are designated, quite arbitrarily, the First Declension, the Second Declension, and so on.

In English, all nouns denoting male beings are "masculine," all nouns denoting females are "feminine," all nouns denoting things are "neuter" (i.e., neither masculine nor

feminine). In Latin, however, as in the Romance and in other languages, the principle of gender is not so simple as it is in English. To be sure, in Latin, the names of males are masculine and the names of females are feminine (natural gender), but the names of things, too, may be masculine or feminine (grammatical gender). For instance, the noun **tuba** 'trumpet' is feminine and **gladius** 'sword' is masculine, although both nouns are used of things. The various declensions tend to include nouns of the same gender. Thus the First and Fifth Declensions include, for the most part, feminine nouns; the Second Declension, masculine and neuter nouns. Additional information on this subject will be given as the need arises in subsequent lessons.

The part of the word which remains unchanged is called the *base*. This is sometimes found by dropping the ending of the nominative case, sometimes by dropping that of the genitive. The base is the most important part of the word for our purpose, for to it are attached the prefixes and suffixes which form compound words. In the following chapters, Latin nouns will usually be given in the nominative case. However, where the base may be found only from the genitive case, this will be given with the nominative and must be studied along with it. Since many English nouns are pluralized in the Latin manner, the nominative plural of each Latin noun must also be studied.

LESSON 1

Nouns of the First Declension Borrowed Without Change

Nouns of the First Declension, with a few exceptions, are feminine. The ending of the nominative singular is **-a**. The nominative plural ends in **-ae**. The base is found by dropping the ending of the nominative singular.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR	BASE	NOMINATIVE PLURAL
antenna 'sailyard'	antenn-	antennae 'sailyards'

The given name *Charles* has been borrowed from the French, with its spelling unchanged. In French, *Charles* is pronounced *shârl*); in English, *chârlz*. The name of the famous city *Cadiz* is pronounced *kâthêth* in Spanish. We have borrowed the noun, kept its spelling intact, but pronounce it in the English manner. *Paris* and *marquis* from the French, *armada* and *Madrid* from the Spanish, *kindergarten* and *delicatessen* from the German, and hundreds of other nouns have been borrowed in this way.

A large number of Latin words entered our language without change in form. In this lesson, we shall study nouns belonging to the First Declension, as, for example, *fauna*, *flora*, and *aurora*. These nouns have been borrowed by English unchanged in form. They are pronounced, however, in the English manner.

LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
arēna 'sand,' 'sandy place'	<i>arena</i>
facētia 'witticisms'	<i>facetiae</i>
Flōra 'goddess of flowers'	<i>flora</i>

Arena and *flora* show that, while the word borrowed by English from Latin may remain unchanged in form, its meaning may be altered considerably. On the other hand, the borrowed word often retains the Latin sense. Thus, the Latin noun *rosa* has the same meaning as the English derivative *rose*. When the meaning of the word shifts, some relationship between the various meanings may usually be traced.

VOCABULARY

corōna 'crown'
nebula 'mist,' 'cloud'
opera 'pains,' 'work'

scintilla 'spark'
villa 'country place'

EXERCISES

(Read carefully the Instructions on Procedure, pages xiii-xvi.)

1. Nouns for Special Study: *alumna*, *area*, *arena*, *lacuna*, *minutiae*, *vertebra*.
2. General Vocabulary Study: Find five English loan words derived from First-Declension nouns.
3. During what period, generally speaking, were the nouns under discussion in this lesson borrowed?
4. What is the plural of *alumna*, *area*, *nebula*, and *opera* in English and in Latin? *Antenna* formerly had only the Latin plural. Today, however, the English plural is permissible. What reason may be given for this change?
5. What name is given to the linguistic relationship between *camera* and *chamber*? (See Supplementary Notes.) Are the nouns *crown* and *stencil* related to any of the words which you have studied above and, if so, what is the nature of this relationship?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Camera will serve as an illustration of an English word identical in spelling with that of its Latin original but measurably different in meaning. To the Romans, *camera* meant 'vault,' 'room.'

Camera obscura, literally 'dark room,' is the name given to an optical apparatus, now obsolete, which, like the modern camera, consisted of a small, light-tight compartment. But this is not the only meaning nor the only form that **camera** assumed in English. As early as the fourteenth century, **camera** entered our language through the French in the form *chamber*, with a sense close to that of the original Latin noun. A Spanish derivative *camarada* was borrowed by the French as *camarade*, which became *comrade* (really 'roommate') in English. The German noun *Kamerad*, made familiar to us through its use as an appeal for quarter by German soldiers during the World War, is closely related to *camarada*. The Germans, too, borrowed the noun from the French *camarade*. Originally, therefore, the word had no suggestion of 'quarter,' but had the same meaning as *comrade* in English.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The letters of Charles Lamb are full of *facetiae*, humorous observations of life, often set against a background of personal grief.

2. When the investigation came to an end, there was not a *scintilla* of evidence against the accused man; not a single charge in the indictment had been substantiated.

3. It became evident that the young man was determined to try his fortunes in the *arena* of politics, for which he had long been preparing.

B

1. Over the pool were suspended some enameled dragon flies, their wings vibrating so rapidly that the flies were like rubies shining in obscure nebulae.

2. There are many *lacunae* in the manuscript, which make it difficult for the translator to determine the exact meaning of many passages.

3. There are *minutiae* in every language, which, when trans-

fused into another through the medium of translation, spoil the original.

4. The Puritans were free to worship as their conscience dictated, but they were quick to force all hands to worship after their own authorized formulae.

LESSON 2

Nouns of the First Declension Anglicized

In the previous lesson, we studied Latin First-Declension nouns, which have been borrowed with their Latin ending *-a* retained. Now *-a* is not a very common ending in English; nor, for that matter, are the endings of the nouns of the other Latin declensions, as we shall presently see. English words tend to terminate either in certain consonants and consonant groups or in the silent letter *-e*. This fact is of capital importance, since the endings of hundreds of loan words from the Latin have been forced to conform to normal English endings—that is, they have been Anglicized. The unfamiliar Latin ending has either been dropped to permit a consonant to end the word or the ending has been changed to silent *-e*.

Sometimes the Anglicizing process goes still further. We have said that English words tend to end in certain consonants and consonant groups. While double *s* and double *f* commonly terminate English words, this is not true of double *p*, double *t*, and other double consonants. In the case of Latin words, the bases of which end in a double consonant, one of the double letters is often discarded along with the ending to conform to the English pattern, as, for example, in **mappa**, which becomes *map* in English.

The present lesson is devoted to those First-Declension nouns which have dropped the ending in English.

LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
mappa 'napkin'	<i>map</i>
mātrōna 'married woman'	<i>matron</i>
matta 'mat' (made of rushes)	<i>mat</i>
vīpera 'snake'	<i>viper</i>

VOCABULARY

fabrica 'workshop'	persōna 'mask' (used by actors), 'part' (in a play)
fōrma 'shape'	ruīna 'downfall,' 'ruin'
nōrma 'carpenter's square,' later 'rule,' 'pattern'	

EXERCISES

(Read carefully the Instructions on Procedure, pages xiii-xvi.)

1. Nouns for Special Study: *barb*, *bull*, *gem*, *herb*, *pen*, *ruin*. What is the linguistic relationship between *bull* and *bullā*?
2. General Vocabulary Study: Find five English loan words derived from First-Declension nouns.
3. Were the words you have studied in this lesson borrowed, in general, at a date earlier or later than those studied in Lesson 1?
4. The German word for 'mill' is *Fabrik*. Which comes closer in meaning to the original Latin, *Fabrik* or the English loan word?
5. To which English noun that you have studied in this lesson is the noun *forge* related? What name do we give to this relationship? How does the meaning of *forge* compare with that of its Latin ancestor?
6. Of what noun is *parson* a doublet?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The noun **mappa** 'napkin' deserves further study. In Medieval Latin, the expression **mappa mundī** means 'map of the world (mundus).' It is this sense that the English loan word *map* retains. According to Quintilian, a famous Roman writer on grammar and rhetoric, **mappa** may have been borrowed by the Romans from Semitic-speaking Carthaginians. It passed from Latin into Old French in the form *nappe*. We borrowed this form, added to it a native English diminutive suffix *-kin* (found, for example, in the noun *lambkin* 'little lamb'), and coined the hybrid

napkin, which retains the original Latin meaning. A further Old French derivative *naperie* became *naperie* 'table linen' in English. But there is still another form of the noun in English which illustrates a not uncommon language phenomenon. From *mappa*, a diminutive *naperon* had been formed in Old French. English borrowed this form along with the others. Now, people using the indefinite article with *naperon* would speak of "a naperonn" (to give it one of its old spellings). In rapid colloquial speech, the two words would be run together as "anaperonn," just as we today tend to say "anapple" instead of "an apple." Then the word was incorrectly redivided. Its original form had been completely forgotten; the *n* which belonged to the word was thought to be part of the indefinite article, and the redivision yielded the modern English *an apron*. There are other examples of this phenomenon. Thus "a nickname" was formerly "an eke-name" and "an adder" formerly "a nadder."

The Romans gave the name **Campānia** to the level plain south-east of the Tiber River. The French borrowed the word in the form *champaigne* (Modern French *champagne*) and applied it to a level province in eastern France famous for the wine which bears its name. *Champaign* 'a plain' and *campaign* also come ultimately from **Campānia**, the latter through the Italian *campagna*. *Campaign* originally signified military operations which took place on an open plain.

LESSON 3

Nouns of the First Declension Anglicized (*Concl'd*)

The preceding lesson was devoted to those nouns of the First Declension which have been Anglicized by dropping the Latin ending. We shall now consider nouns that have been Anglicized by changing the Latin ending to the common English ending, the silent vowel *-e*.

LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
figūra 'form,' 'shape'	<i>figure</i>
rosa 'rose'	<i>rose</i>
statua 'standing figure'	<i>statue</i>

The two methods of Anglicizing Latin nouns considered in this and in the preceding lesson will, in general, explain the forms of a majority of First-Declension nouns in English. There are, however, a few minor changes due to French influences:

(1) Many First-Declension nouns end in **-ia**. This ending became **-ie** in French and, under French influence, **-y** in English.

(2) The combination **-ti-** (later **-ci-**) was pronounced in French with a sort of *s*-sound, represented in English spelling by *c* or *s*. Under French influence, the ending **-tia** (later **-cia**) of First-Declension nouns, therefore, became **-ce** and occasionally **-cy** in English.

LATIN NOUN	FRENCH DERIVATIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
furia 'rage'	<i>furie</i>	<i>fury</i>
grātia 'favor'	<i>grâce</i>	<i>grace</i>
fallācia 'deceit'	—	<i>fallacy</i>

VOCABULARY

caerimōnia 'religious rite'
 colōnia 'colonial town'
 cūra 'attention'

flamma 'flame'
 fortūna 'chance,' 'luck'

EXERCISES

(Read carefully the Instructions on Procedure, pages xiii-xvi.)

1. Nouns for Special Study: *calumny*, *penury*, *rapine*, *usury*. What irregularity is there in the etymology of *usury*?
2. General Vocabulary Study: Find five English loan words derived from First-Declension nouns. Find five others that are used as given names. Find two Latin First-Declension nouns that, having been borrowed both unchanged and Anglicized, have given rise to doublets.
3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *affluence*, *calumny*, *fallacy*, *penury*, *plunder*, *poverty*, *rapine*, *slander*, *sophism*.
4. What were the Roman names for *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *Germany*?
5. From what Latin noun is *calorie* derived? Account for its form.
6. Explain in the light of their original Latin meaning: "logical fallacy," "rest cure."

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The noun **cappa** 'cloak with a hood' has yielded the triplets *cap*, *cape*, and *cope* in English, all preserving to some extent the original meaning of the Latin noun. Moreover, a diminutive form, **cappella** 'small cloak,' yielded, through Old French, the English noun *chapel*. The explanation of this curious shift in meaning is to be found in a story told about St. Martin (ca. 316-400). The story runs that the youthful St. Martin, while serving on military duty, shared his cloak (**cappella**) with a beggar. On the following night, he had a vision in which Christ informed His angels of this act of mercy. The cloak soon became a sacred relic and was placed in a sanctuary of the Frankish kings. The custodians of the cloak were called **cappellāni** 'cloakmen.' Before long, the place where the cloak itself was housed was called **cappella**. The word then spread and came to be used of any place of worship.

The noun **cappellānus** finally entered English in the form *chaplain*. To complete the history of the word, we must notice the noun *chaplet* 'wreath,' 'crown' (for the head). *Chaplet* is derived from the diminutive of *chapel*, which, in turn, is a diminutive of **cappa**. *Chaplet* has, to some degree, retained the original sense of **cappa**.

Still another derivative of **cappa** has curiously shifted its meaning. In our discussion of **mappa** we noted *naperon*, a French diminutive of this noun. (See Supplementary Notes, Lesson 2.) *Chaperon*, the French diminutive of **cappa**, was similarly formed and was used of a 'small hat' or 'bonnet,' particularly of a type worn after the sixteenth century by middle-aged women. Since such women often acted as companions to young ladies of the upper classes, the name of the bonnet itself was, by metonymy, transferred to women acting in such a capacity.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The family had always been on the brink of poverty, but, with the coming of the depression, it found itself in abject *penury*, without friends or resources of any kind.

2. As we were forced to borrow money at a time when it was scarce, the interest charges were unconscionably large, amounting for us, at least, to *usury*.

3. Though the writer had no intention of misleading his readers wilfully, his entire argument was a nexus of *fallacies*.

4. The statement that the judge had consorted with known criminals was a *calumny*, maliciously broadcast to damage his reputation.

LESSON 4

The Second Declension: Masculine Nouns

The Second Declension includes both masculine and neuter nouns.

Most masculine nouns of this declension end in **-us** in the nominative singular. The base of the noun may be found by dropping this ending. The nominative plural ends in **-ī**.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR	BASE	NOMINATIVE PLURAL
alumnus 'foster son'	alumn-	alumni 'foster sons'

A few Second-Declension masculine nouns end in **-er** and **-ir** in the nominative singular. The bases of these nouns may be found by dropping the ending **-ī** of the genitive singular. The genitive will, therefore, be given along with the nominative.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR	GENITIVE SINGULAR	BASE	NOMINATIVE PLURAL
minister 'servant'	ministri	ministr-	ministri 'servants'

Like First-Declension nouns, masculine nouns of the Second Declension have been borrowed by English in either of two general ways: (1) without change; or (2) Anglicized by dropping the ending or by changing it to silent **-e**.

LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
alumnus 'foster son'	<i>alumnus</i>
minister 'servant'	<i>minister</i>
digitus 'finger,' 'toe'	<i>digit</i>
nervus 'sinew,' 'tendon'	<i>nerve</i>

VOCABULARY

animus 'mind,' 'feeling'
arbiter, arbitri 'judge'
circus 'ring'

modus 'measure,' 'manner'
radius 'staff,' 'rod,' 'spoke of a wheel'
terminus 'boundary stone or post'

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *cancer, focus, fund, genius, literati, node, stimulus*. To which of these nouns is *canker* related and what is the relationship? Give the plural forms of *focus* and *stimulus*.

2. General Vocabulary Study: Find ten English loan words derived from Second-Declension masculine nouns.

3. What name is given to the linguistic relationship between *radius* and *ray*?

4. What is the meaning of the expression "*sock* and buskin"? Compare the meaning of *sock* in this expression with the meaning of the Latin word from which it is derived.

5. Determine the etymology of *limbo*. What is its linguistic relationship to *limb* ('edge,' 'border')?

6. There are two English nouns spelled *mood*. Is either of them related to the Latin **modus**? There is a verb *pine* and a noun *pine*. Distinguish between them from the point of view of etymology and of meaning.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The Romans used **circus** 'ring' of an enclosure in which athletic contests and games were held. The enclosure was called a **circus** because such enclosures were, in general, circular in shape. The largest was the famous **Circus Maximus**. Here the Romans held chariot races, events which everyone attended religiously and on which many of them gambled heavily. There were other racing events, including one in which dare-devil contestants rode two horses at full speed, leaping from one to the other. Many of the gladiatorial contests and combats between men and wild beasts took place in the **Circus Maximus**. The modern *circus* has inherited little of the ancient **circus** except the name and the general shape; the bulk of the heritage of the old Roman **circus** has fallen to the racetrack. The British use the word also of a place where

a number of streets meet as, for example, "Picadilly *Circus*." In the United States, *circle*, a noun derived from *circulus* 'little circle,' a diminutive of *circus*, is preferred in this sense (cf. Columbus *Circle*).

The Latin noun *racēmus* 'cluster of berries' or 'grapes' has been Anglicized to *raceme*, a botanical term signifying 'flower cluster, the separate flowers of which are attached by short equal stalks at equal distances along a central stem.' Its doublet, the more familiar *raisin*, came into English through Old French. In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, certain dried seedless grapes, originally brought from Corinth, were called *raisins de Corauntz* (*Corinth*). Our English word *currant* is merely a corrupt form of *Corauntz*.

Derivatives of *dominus* 'master' and its feminine *domina* 'mistress' appear in English in several forms with a variety of meanings. Thus *dominie* 'schoolmaster,' 'minister' was borrowed directly from the Latin *domine*, vocative of *dominus*; but *don*, a title of respect, came into English through the Spanish. *Domino*, a derivative of *dominus* through the French, was originally used of a hood worn by a canon of a cathedral. The game of *dominoes* may have derived its name from the fact that the "pieces" used in the game are black like the church vestment. From *domina* are derived *dame* through the French and *duenna* 'governess,' 'chaperon' through the Spanish.

Master stems ultimately from the Latin *magister* 'leader,' 'teacher.' When *master* was used with a proper name, the tendency was to slur its pronunciation in order to place the emphasis on the proper name. Thus arose the doublet *mister*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. I plume myself on being an *alumnus* of the University of Life, but the only degree I can flaunt is that of Success.

2. We chose as *arbiter* one who, by reason of his disinterestedness and sound judgment, could decide upon the proper course of action for us to pursue.

B

1. After many years, I am still wandering about in the limbo of the writing profession.
2. While his argument is sometimes marred by animus, it must be recorded that the writer has no little cause for this feeling.
3. All living talk has a tendency to draw back into the common focus of humanity.
4. He had a genius for doing the right thing at the wrong time.

LESSON 5

The Second Declension: Neuter Nouns

Neuter nouns of the Second Declension end in **-um** in the nominative singular. The base may be found by dropping this ending. The nominative plural ends in **-a**.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR	BASE	NOMINATIVE PLURAL
cerebrum 'brain'	cerebr-	cerebra 'brains'

Most neuter nouns of the Second Declension have been borrowed by English in either of two general ways: (1) without change; or (2) Anglicized by dropping the ending or by changing it to silent *-e*.

LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
cerebrum 'brain'	<i>cerebrum</i>
pulpitum 'scaffold,' 'stage'	<i>pulpit</i>
filum 'thread'	<i>file</i>

Like nouns of the First Declension (see page 26), a few Second-Declension neuters show minor changes:

- (1) The ending **-ium** appears in English as **-y**.

lilium 'lily'	<i>lily</i>
----------------------	-------------

- (2) The endings **-tium** and **-cium** appear in English as **-ce**.

spatium 'space'	<i>space</i>
aedificium 'building'	<i>edifice</i>

In the case of **mōnstrum** 'divine omen' >¹ *monster* and

¹ The symbol > signifies *giving rise to*. When reversed (<), it signifies *derived from*.

membrum 'limb' > *member*, the endings have been dropped (**monstr** and **membr**) and the **-tr** and **-br** of the bases changed to **-ter** and **-ber**, respectively.

VOCABULARY

elementum 'first principle'

mōnstrum 'divine omen' (indicating misfortune),
'freak'

pretium 'worth,' 'value' (see Supplementary Notes)

spatium 'space'

verbum 'word,' 'verb'

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *amulet, duel, fulcrum, odium, tedium*.

2. General Vocabulary Study: Find ten English loan words derived from Second-Declension neuter nouns.

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *amulet, approbation, hatred, irksomeness, odium, talisman, tedium*.

4. What is the linguistic relationship between: **verbum** and *word*; *candelabrum* and *chandelier*? What is the plural of *candelabrum*?

5. Distinguish, from the point of view of etymology and meaning, between: *palate* and *pallet*; the nouns *file* in the expressions "single *file*" and "nail *file*."

6. There are two English nouns spelled *vice*. Distinguish between these nouns from the point of view of etymology and of meaning. Which one belongs to the class of nouns discussed in this lesson?

7. What is the English loan word from **pallium** 'cloak'? When, generally speaking, was it borrowed?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The Latin noun **rōstrum**, which has been borrowed by English without change, has a long history. Its primary sense in Latin was 'bird's beak.' Later it assumed the meaning 'ram of a warship,' since the ram—a long metal-shod point which projected from the prow of large warships and was used to pierce the enemy's hull—resembled a bird's beak. In 338 B. C., after a naval victory,

the speaker's platform in the Forum at Rome was adorned with rams from the captured ships and was consequently called the **rōstra** from that time on. English has shifted the word back to the singular, *rostrum*, using *rostra* for the plural.

Torment is the Anglicized form of the Latin **tormentum**. The latter, derived ultimately from the verb **torquēre** 'to twist,' was a term applied generally to instruments used in siege warfare—ponderous machines, propelled by twisted ropes, for hurling stones and arrows. It included also instruments of torture, many of which involve some form of twisting. The English derivative has preserved the latter sense, for a *torment* is a 'torturing of mind or body.'

The plant name *nasturtium*, borrowed from the Latin **nāsturtium** 'cress' without change, is in part derived from the same verb and means, etymologically, 'nose-twisting.' Ultimately, *-turtium* comes from **torquēre** and *nas-* from **nāsus** 'nostril.' The ancients believed that the pungent odor of the plant caused the nose to twitch.

Plumbum 'lead' has produced a number of English derivatives. By dropping its ending, **plumbum** yielded *plumb* 'a weight of lead attached to a line and used by builders, etc., to indicate a vertical direction.' **Plumbārius** 'one who works with lead' has given us *plumber*. From a theoretical Late Latin verb ***plumbicāre** 'to heave the lead' (in testing the depth of water), we derive *plunge*. *Plummet* is ultimately a combination of **plumbum** and the French-derived diminutive suffix *-et*. Finally, from the French expression *à plomb* 'according to plumb,' 'perpendicular,' we derive the noun *aplomb* 'poise.'

'Value,' the primary meaning of the Latin **pretium**, has been retained in the loan word *price*. A secondary meaning, 'reward,' is preserved in two of the triplets, *prize* and *praise*, which stem ultimately from **pretium**.

Oidium 'hatred,' which came into English unchanged, was often used by the Romans in the phrase **in odiō** 'in hatred,' 'hateful.' This phrase is the source of the doublets *annoy* 'be hateful to,' 'irritate' and *ennui* 'mental weariness caused by something that

has become hateful.' *Annoy* entered English through Old French; *ennui*, through Modern French.

Ingenuus originally meant 'inborn quality,' 'talent'; then it came to mean 'that which has been produced by the exercise of talent,' 'an invention.' It is the secondary meaning which is preserved in the English derivative *engine* and its shortened form *gin* (e.g., in "cotton *gin*"). The latter is not to be confused with the drink *gin*, which comes ultimately from the Latin *jūniperus* 'juniper tree' and is, therefore, the doublet of *juniper*. *Jūniperus* became *genevre* in Old French; it was used of a drink distilled from a grain (especially rye) and flavored with juniper berries. *Genevre*, passing into English through Dutch, was first altered to *geneva* (probably under the impression that the drink came from Geneva) and then contracted to *gin*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. He incurred the *odium* of an entire nation because he retaliated against his opponents when, by sinking his personal prejudices, he might have won universal approbation.
2. The committee chose a cool, self-possessed person who, they thought, could handle the delicate mission with the necessary *aplomb*.

B

1. Located in the heart of Rome, the Papal State lives on—an *imperium in imperio*.
2. Let no one say of him that, for lucre or for personal preferment, he ever forsook friend or principle.
3. Looking farther, I was surprised to find that the chips were covered with such a large number of ants that it was not a *duellum* but a *bellum*, a war between two races of these insects.

LESSON 6

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension Borrowed Without Change

Latin adjectives, like those of the Romance languages, have the same gender as the nouns they modify. Therefore Latin adjectives have, in general, three forms: one to modify masculine nouns; another to modify feminine nouns; and a third to modify neuter nouns.

All Latin adjectives fall into two groups: (1) First- and Second-Declension adjectives; or (2) Third-Declension adjectives. We shall reserve the study of the second group for a future lesson.

When First- and Second-Declension adjectives modify masculine nouns, they have the same endings as masculine nouns of the Second Declension (nominative singular **-us**, **-er**; plural, **-ī**); when modifying feminine nouns, they have the same endings as First-Declension feminine nouns (nominative singular **-a**; plural, **-ae**); and when modifying neuter nouns, they have the same endings as neuter nouns of the Second Declension (nominative singular **-um**; plural, **-a**). For convenience, we shall give only the masculine singular form of adjectives. The base of adjectives, like the base of masculine nouns of the Second Declension, may be found by dropping the ending **-us**. When the nominative singular does not reveal the base of the adjective, the genitive singular will also be given (e.g., **miser** 'wretched'; genitive singular, **miserī**; base **miser**-).

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOMINATIVE SINGULAR:	bonus 'good'	bona	bonum
NOMINATIVE PLURAL:	boni	bonae	bona
BASE:	bon-		

Many Latin adjectives of the First and Second Declension have been borrowed without change of form. A few have been borrowed in the masculine or feminine form; the majority, however, in the neuter. Latin adjectives, especially neuters, were often used as nouns; hence, the English loan words derived from them are often nouns.

LATIN ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
miser 'wretched,' 'wretched person'	<i>miser</i>
quotus 'how many,' 'how great'; feminine quota (originally modifying the noun pars 'part') 'how great (a part)'	<i>quota</i>

VOCABULARY

bonus 'good'	medius 'middle'
decōrus 'becoming,' 'seemly'	vacuus 'empty'
integer, integri 'untouched,' 'whole'	

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *modicum*, *neuter*, *nostrum*, *quantum*.
2. General Vocabulary Study: Select four First- and Second-Declension adjectives which have been borrowed as feminine given names. What would their forms have been if they had been borrowed as masculine names?
3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *auspicious*, *decorum*, *dignity*, *entire*, *ominous*, *sinister*, *vacuum*, *void*, *whole*.
4. What is the linguistic relationship between *integer* and *entire*? Which word was borrowed first?
5. Compare the etymological meanings of *album* and *medium* with their current meanings.
6. In Roman times, it was popularly believed (except in taking

the auguries) that omens on the right were lucky while those on the left were unlucky. In the light of this superstition, justify the current meaning of *sinister*.

7. Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of the expression *belles-lettres* (*bellae litterae*).

8. Translate the following Latin expressions: *via media*; *tōtō caelō* (in the ablative case and to be translated 'by,' the nominative singular being *tōtum caelum*); *in vacuō*. Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use each expression in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Madonna is derived, through Italian, from the Latin *mea domina* 'my lady.' *Madam*, borrowed through Old French, is its doublet. Through Italian, the Latin *prima domina* 'first lady' has given us *primadonna*. *Belladonna* 'the deadly nightshade' comes, also through Italian, from *bella domina* 'beautiful lady.' Women used a tincture of the plant to dilate the pupils of their eyes and thereby to enhance their beauty. The same adjective *bellus* is the source of English *beau* and *belle*. Both nouns were borrowed through French, the former from the masculine *bellus*, the latter from the feminine *bella*.

The musical terms *alt* and *alto* are derived from the Latin adjective *altus* 'high,' 'deep.' The French derivative of *altus* is *haut*, which, with the addition of the native English suffix *-y* and slightly changed in spelling, became *haughty* in English. The French *haut* also appears in the compound noun *hautboy* 'a high-pitched woodwind instrument.' *Hautboy* and *oboe*, the more familiar term for the instrument, are doublets. The first element in each comes from the Latin *altus*; the origin of the second is not certain. *Hautboy*, of course, was borrowed through French (*hautbois*), while *oboe*, like many of our musical terms, was borrowed through Italian.

The Latin adjective *integer* means 'untouched.' An *integer* is a number that is 'untouched'—i.e., 'unbroken'—the opposite of *fraction* or 'broken (*fractus*) number.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. If by *prude* be meant a secretly vicious person who affects an excessive *decorum*, by all means let the *prude* disappear, even at the cost of shamelessness.

2. We affect to laugh at the folly of those who put faith in *nostrums*, but are willing to see for ourselves whether they will cure our own miserable ills.

3. George Moore, in his adolescence, chose painting as a *medium* of self-expression, but, realizing that he possessed slender ability with the brush, he turned to *belles-lettres*.

4. It must not be imagined that my retirement from business has produced a *vacuum* in my life, for, if the truth were known, the void has always been there, and I am fast filling it up by developing a talent for playing the *oboe*.

B

1. Without law, there is no sin; without eyes, there is no indecorum.

2. A sense of the ridiculous lays the basis of that propriety and decorum of conduct upon which is founded the charm of intercourse among equals.

3. In those days, every morning paper kept an author who was bound to furnish daily a quantum of witty paragraphs.

4. Villon was, in all likelihood, a sinister dog, but with a wit and a look in his eye, and a loose flexile mouth that goes with wit and an overweening sensual temperament.

LESSON 7

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension Anglicized. Specialization and Generali- zation of Meaning

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension. Latin First- and Second-Declension adjectives appear in English Anglicized by dropping the ending or by changing it to silent *-e*.

LATIN ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
crispus 'quivering,' 'curly'	<i>crisp</i>
amplus 'spacious'	<i>ample</i>

Specialization and Generalization of Meaning. In studying Latin nouns and adjectives, we have noted, more particularly, those changes in form which took place through English and French influences. We have noticed, merely in passing, the various changes in *meaning* which these words underwent.

The name *semantics* is given to that branch of philology which is concerned with meanings, and hence *semantic changes* are *changes in meaning*. The two most common semantic changes we call *specialization of meaning* and *generalization of meaning*. Specialization is the change from a general to a specific meaning. For example, in Latin, **minister** is 'a servant of any sort'; in English, however, *minister* is usually 'a servant of the State or Church' only. Again, the Latin noun **opera** means 'composition,' 'work'—not merely 'musical work.' **Albus**, as we have

seen, means 'white,' and **album** was originally 'any white thing.' **Fābula** to a Roman meant 'any kind of tale'; in English a *fable* is 'a tale not based on fact.'

The reverse of this process—the change from a specific to a general meaning—is called *generalization*. For example, **poena** in Latin meant 'fine,' 'penalty'; but *pain*, its derivative through the French, embraces all kinds of suffering, whether caused by a penalty or not. **Injūria** in Latin originally meant 'injustice'; today, however, 'injustice' is merely one form of *injury*.

A word frequently undergoes both processes in the development of its various meanings. Thus, the Latin noun **arēna**, meaning 'sand' primarily, was first specialized to 'a sand-strewn place of combat' and then generalized to 'any place of combat,' whether strewn with sand or not.

VOCABULARY

brūtus 'dull,' 'irrational'
firmus 'steadfast,' 'fixed'
hūmānus 'human'

plānus 'flat'
sānus 'healthy'

EXERCISES

1. Adjectives for Special Study: *august, benign, curt, dire, jejune*.

2. General Vocabulary Study: Select three English loan words derived from Latin First- and Second-Declension nouns or adjectives which have been specialized in meaning and three which have been generalized in meaning.

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *abundant, ample, bestial, brute, concise, crisp, curt, energetic, insipid, irrational, jejune, sane, scanty, sharp, supine*.

4. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between: *prone* and *supine*; *livid* and *lurid*; *human* and *humane*.

5. What are the doublets of *grease* and *round*?

6. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions:

“*crass* stupidity”; “*crisp* style”; “*gelid* language of the law”; “*robust* character”; “*vapid* wine”?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

A number of doublets have been derived from adjectives of the First and Second Declension. *Firm* and *farm* come ultimately from Latin **firmus** ‘steadfast,’ ‘fixed.’ *Farm*, derived from the feminine **firma**, was used first of ‘a fixed payment,’ then of ‘a fixed payment for the rent of land,’ and finally of the ‘land’ itself.

Acūtus ‘sharp’ has yielded *acute* and *cute*, the latter a clipped form of *acute*. *Sole* and *solo* both come ultimately from the Latin **sōlus** ‘alone.’ **Antīquus** ‘old,’ ‘ancient’ is the source of *antique* and *antic*. *Antic* originally meant ‘fantastic,’ and then came to mean ‘fantastic caper.’

Plane, *plain*, and *piano* all come from the Latin adjective **plānus** ‘flat,’ ‘level,’ ‘smooth.’ *Piano* was borrowed through Italian **piano** ‘gentle,’ ‘soft.’ The *piano*—or, to give its full name, *piano-forte* (originally **piano e forte** in Italian)—is ‘an instrument that plays both soft and loud’ (Latin **fortis** ‘strong,’ ‘loud’).

Salver ‘tray’ is connected linguistically with the adjective *safe*, which came into English, through Old French, from the Latin **salvus** ‘safe.’ From **salvus**, a verb **salvāre** ‘to save’ was formed, which yielded the Spanish noun **salva**. Spanish nobles, fearing that poison might be placed in their food and drink, assigned one of the servants to taste everything that was to be served at their tables. This process of ‘tasting’ was called **salva**. The noun came subsequently to be applied to the ‘tray’ on which the food and drink thus tasted were served. English borrowed the noun in the latter sense, adding the native English suffix *-er*, and generalized it to include ‘any tray.’

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. In the course of my reading, I have found few books so *jejune*, so entirely devoid of interest.
2. In this crisis, we will not lie *supine* nor allow our enemies to

crush us; but, with all the energy at our command and with our heads high, we will fight to the bitter end.

3. The cruelty of the trappers aroused *humane* and spirited opposition from the farmers.

4. The President is famous for his *crisp* rejoinders; but nowhere has he displayed his talent in this direction with more telling effect than in his lively answers to the questions of Washington correspondents.

B

The gracious old lady spread a benign influence over everyone with whom she associated.

LESSON 8

Nouns of the Third Declension Borrowed Without Change

Unlike nouns of the First and Second Declension, those of the Third Declension have a variety of endings in the nominative singular. The genitive, however, ends consistently in **-is**, and the base of the noun may always be found by dropping this ending. The genitive case of Third-Declension nouns will therefore be given (except where the nominative and genitive are identical) and should be memorized along with the nominative.

Again, unlike the First and Second Declensions, the Third Declension includes nouns of all three genders. The nominative plural of masculine and feminine nouns ends in **-ēs**, that of neuters in **-a**. Neuter nouns will be indicated by the symbol "n." All nouns not so marked are masculines or feminines.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR	GENITIVE SINGULAR	BASE	NOMINATIVE PLURAL
crux 'cross'	crucis	cruc-	crucēs 'crosses'
ars 'skill'	artis	art-	artēs 'skills'
genus (n) 'kind'	generis	gener-	genera 'kinds'
sermō 'discourse'	sermōnis	sermōn-	sermōnēs 'discourses'
stāmen (n) 'warp,' 'thread'	stāminis	stāmin-	stāmina 'warps,' 'threads'

A few Third-Declension nouns have alternative bases, one found in the usual way by dropping the ending **-is** of

the genitive singular, the other by dropping merely the -s of the genitive ending.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR	GENITIVE SINGULAR	BASE	NOMINATIVE PLURAL
finis 'end'	finis	fin- (as in <i>fin-al</i>)	finēs 'ends'
		finī- (as in <i>fini-al</i>)	

The nominative singular of Third-Declension nouns frequently appears in English unchanged in form.

LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
lēns, lentis 'lentil'	<i>lens</i>
torpēdō, torpēdinis 'numbness,' 'sting ray' (a fish)	<i>torpedo</i>

VOCABULARY

corpus, corporis (n) 'body'

finis, finis 'end'

genus, generis (n) 'race,' 'kind,' 'sort'

index, indicis 'forefinger'

opus, operis (n) 'work'

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *apex, augur, axis, cadaver, codex, crux, pelvis, virago*. Which nouns show specialization of meaning and which generalization of meaning? What is the plural of *apex, axis, codex, and crux* in Latin and in English?

2. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between: *omen* and *prodigy*; *calix* and *calyx*; *vertex* and *vortex*. To which of these nouns is *chalice* related, and what name do we give to this relationship?

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *apex, augur, cadaver, corpse, nadir, soothsayer, termagant, vertex, virago*.

4. What are the doublets of *code* and *cross*?

5. Compare the etymological meaning of *lemur* with its current meaning.

6. What is the linguistic relationship between *stamen* and *stamina*? Distinguish in meaning between them.

7. Determine the pronunciation, etymology, and current meaning of the expression *alma māter*. What is the linguistic relationship between *māter* and *mother*?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Cross, *crisscross*, and *cruise* all come ultimately from the Latin noun **crux** 'cross.' **Crux** passed through several languages, finally to yield English *cross*, which retains the original Latin meaning. *Crisscross* is partly a corruption of *Christ's cross* and partly a reduplication of *cross*. A sailing vessel tends to zigzag and to cross its own course; hence the meaning of the verb, borrowed probably through Dutch, from the Latin verb **cruciāre** 'to cross,' a derivative of **crux**.

Genus and **corpus**, too, appear in English in a number of forms, each of which shows a distinct specialization of the original Latin sense. **Genus** means 'kind,' or 'sort' in general. In English, this sense of the noun is generally limited to logic, botany, and zoölogy. *Gender* and *genre*, its derivatives through the French, are generally confined to grammar and to art, respectively. **Corpus** signified to the Roman 'a body of any sort.' In English, however, *corpus* has become specialized to mean usually 'a body of writings of one author or of writings embracing one subject.' *Corpse*, borrowed from the Latin through Old French, is limited in meaning to 'a dead body,' while *corps*, a doublet through Modern French, refers specifically to 'a body of men.'

Parse 'to describe a word grammatically,' 'to resolve a sentence into its component parts and to describe them' is probably the Latin noun **pars** 'part' made into a verb. To *parse* a word is to give the answer to the question: **Quae pars orātiōnis (est)?** 'What part of speech (is it)?'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. May I look back upon life as a long task duly completed and welcome the repose to follow when I have breathed the word "*finis*."

2. The movie scout was in quest of a woman of brawn who could, with appropriate conviction, act the role of a *virago* in a turbulent domestic scene.

3. The artist had a penchant for *genre*, little lifelike pictures of common folk.

B

1. A good serious play must be founded on one of the passionate cruces of life.

2. Let them rend and be rent; let them paddle in blood and viscera till—if that should ever happen—their stomachs turn.

3. The lie of a good woman is the true index of her heart.

4. We were well on our way from England, that bleak apex of the world with its nimbus of fogs.

LESSON 9

Nouns of the Third Declension Anglicized

Third-Declension nouns appear in English Anglicized by dropping the ending of the nominative or genitive singular, or by changing these endings to silent *-e*.

LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
cupīdō, cupīdinis 'desire'	<i>Cupid</i>
pars, partis 'part'	<i>part</i>
imāgō, imāginis 'likeness'	<i>image</i>
satelles, satellitis 'attendant,' 'follower'	<i>satellite</i>

VOCABULARY

ars, artis 'skill'

crīmen, crīminis (n) 'accusation,' 'fault'

līmes, līmitis 'path,' 'boundary'

origō, originis 'beginning'

pars, partis 'part'

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *bile*, *cohort*, *font*, *frond*, *orb*, *sermon*. What is the linguistic relationship between *cohort* and *court*?

2. General Vocabulary Study: Find five English loan words derived from Third-Declension nouns.

3. Compare the etymological meaning of *client* with its current meaning.

4. Translate the following Latin expressions: *bonā fide* (ablative case, to be translated 'in'); *drāmatis persōnae*; *fōns et origō*; *suī generis*. Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use each expression in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.

5. There are three English nouns spelled *host*. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between them.

6. Members of the lowest class at West Point are called *plebes*. Justify this meaning in the light of the etymological meaning of the word.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

A number of Third-Declension nouns have been borrowed as doublets, one unchanged in form and the other Anglicized. This is true of *virgō*, *virginis* 'maiden,' *scorpiō*, *scorpiōnis* 'scorpion,' and *leō*, *leōnis* 'lion.' In their unchanged Latin forms, these are used as the names of constellations; Anglicized, they have become *virgin*, *scorpion*, and *Leon* (a given name), respectively. *Leō*, *leōnis* is also the source of *lion*, and the final element in *dandelion*. The latter, coming through the French *dent de lion*, means etymologically 'tooth of a lion (*dēns*, *dentis* 'tooth').' The flower is so-called because of a fancied resemblance of the lobes of its leaves to the teeth of a lion.

Several titles of nobility stem ultimately from Third-Declension nouns. Thus *prince* comes from *prīnceps* 'first man,' the official title of the early Roman emperors; *duke*, from *dux*, *ducis* 'leader.' *Dux* has also yielded *doge*, title of the chief magistrate in the former Republics of Venice and Genoa, and *duce*, a comparatively recent borrowing. The noun *count* comes from *comes*, *comitis* 'companion.' *Comes stabulī* 'count of the stable,' 'equerry,' later used as a high military title, has come into English, through Old French, as *constable*. *Czar* and *Kaiser* are merely corruptions of *Caesar*. The Latin noun *rēx* 'king' has been borrowed as the given names *Rex* and *Roy*.

Pāpiliō, *pāpiliōnis* originally meant 'butterfly' but later took on the sense of 'tent,' through a fancied resemblance of the flapping sides of a tent to the motion of the wings of a butterfly. Our English derivative *pavilion* preserves only the latter sense.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. His rage for consideration has betrayed the dog into his *satellite* position as the friend of man.
2. Among orchestra conductors, Toscanini is perhaps *sui generis*; there is no other quite like him.
3. An honest politician is a *rara avis*, and should be stuffed and put into a glass case to be admired by the gaping multitudes.
4. In large centers of population, shopping guides, disguised as *bona fide* journals, spring up easily.

B

1. The Germans call the counter-Maginot line by the Latin word *limes*, after the old Roman *limes Germanicus*, a line of fortifications extending from the Rhine to the Danube.
2. In some places, clumps of palms threw their fronds above the forest roof.

LESSON 10

Adjectives of the Third Declension. Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives of the Third Declension. Third-Declension adjectives often have different endings for modifying masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns. However, since the feminine and neuter forms are relatively unimportant for the study of English loan words, we shall limit ourselves to a study of the masculine form only.

Many Third-Declension adjectives end in **-is**, and the base may be found by dropping this ending (e.g., **gravis** 'heavy,' base **grav-**). Where the nominative singular of the masculine does not end in **-is**, the genitive singular will also be given. The base may be found by dropping the genitive ending **-is** (e.g., **atrōx** 'cruel,' genitive **atrōcis**, base **atrōc-**).

Third-Declension adjectives have been borrowed by English in either of two general ways: (1) without change; or (2) Anglicized by dropping the ending or by changing it to silent *-e*.

LATIN ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
pauper, pauperis 'poor'	<i>pauper</i>
grandis 'full-grown,' 'great'	<i>grand</i>
rudis 'unwrought,' 'uncouth'	<i>rude</i>

Comparison of Adjectives. Most English adjectives have three degrees of comparison: a positive, a comparative, and a superlative. The comparative is formed by attaching *-er*, and the superlative by attaching *-est*, to the positive. To

form all the degrees of an adjective is to *compare* it. Thus, *great* is compared as follows: positive, *great*; comparative, *greater*; and superlative, *greatest*.

Similarly, Latin adjectives are compared by attaching certain endings to the base of the positive. The comparative is formed by attaching the ending *-ior*, and the superlative by attaching the ending *-issimus*, to the base of the positive. All Latin adjectives in the comparative degree belong to the Third-Declension type; in the superlative degree, to the First- and Second-Declension type.

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
NOMINATIVE SINGULAR			
MASCULINE:	excelsus 'high'	excelsior, excelsiōris	excelsissi- mus
BASE:	excels-	excelsiōr-	excelsissim-

Like English (e.g., *good, better, best*), Latin has a number of adjectives which are compared irregularly. Several of these are important for our study of English borrowings.

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
NOMINATIVE SINGULAR			
MASCULINE:	parvus 'small'	minor, mi- nōris	minimus
BASE:	parv-	minōr-	minim-
NOMINATIVE SINGULAR			
MASCULINE:	māgnus 'great'	mājor, mājōris	māximus
BASE:	māgn-	mājōr-	māxim-
NOMINATIVE SINGULAR			
MASCULINE:	superus 'high'	superior, superiōris	suprēmus or summus
BASE:	super-	superiōr-	suprēm- or summ-

VOCABULARY

exterus 'outward' (compared like
superus)
fortis 'strong'

gravis 'heavy'
similis 'like' (superlative **simillimus**)

EXERCISES

1. Adjectives for Special Study: *inane, solemn, sterile, suave.*
2. What does the Latin **omnibus** literally mean? What case form is it? Compare the etymological meaning of *omnibus* with its current meaning and account for any difference between the two. What is the origin of *bus* in *bus boy*?
3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *bland, brusque, frivolous, grand, inane, magnificent, rough, rude, sober, solemn, suave, vacuous.*
4. Give the comparison of the Latin adjective from which *pianissimo* is derived. (See Supplementary Notes, Lesson 7.)
5. Give the masculine singular, positive degree, of all adjectives appearing in the following expressions: **ipsissima verba** 'the very words'; **ā fortiōrī** 'from the stronger'; **cēterīs paribus** 'all other things (being) equal.' Translate the expression **ēditō princeps**. Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each of the four expressions in English. To what part of speech is each equivalent in English? Use each expression in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.
6. Compare the etymological meanings of *forest* and *mayor* with their current meanings.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Gravis 'heavy,' from which the English adjective *grave* has been borrowed, has passed through Old French to appear in English as *grief*. Similarly, *brief* has come from the Latin **brevis** 'short.' The influence of Old French is also responsible for *poor*, the doublet of *pauper*.

Pār, paris, passing through Old French, became *peer* in English, while the neuter plural **paria** 'equal things' became *pair*. The Latin expression **nōn pār** 'not equal' was altered to **nomper** in Old French and used in the sense of 'third man,' 'odd man' (in a group of equals). This became *nompere* in Middle English. As in the

case of *apron* (see Supplementary Notes, Lesson 2), the expression "a nonpere" was altered in pronunciation to "an ompere" and finally became the current *an umpire*, 'the non-equal third man who judges between two equal contestants or groups of contestants.'

There are two Latin adjectives, commonly used as nouns in Latin, which have a comparative degree, namely, *juvenis* 'young,' 'youth' and *senex* 'old,' 'old man.' The comparative of the former is *jūnior* 'younger,' 'younger man' and of the latter *senior* 'older,' 'older man.' *Senior*, in its second meaning, is of prime importance from the point of view of Romance as well as of English etymology. It is the source of *señor* in Spanish and *signor* in Italian. The French *monsieur* and *monseigneur* both go back to the Latin *meus senior* 'my sir.' In English, *senior* became *sire*, later shortened to *sir*, a doublet. *Surly* is simply a combination of *sir* and the native English adjective-forming suffix *-ly*. It was originally spelled *sirly* and meant 'masterful.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. As adequate provision has been made for the care of the aged, we may perhaps assume *a priori* that all homes for the aged in the land will vanish as if by magic.
2. Since accidents have been decreasing year by year, we may infer *a posteriori* that the new safety devices have proved effective.
3. For many years we were looking for the apothegm, when, quite by chance, we found it in an old Latin book in which the *ipsissima verba* were revealed to us for the first time.
4. We found our host *suave*, urbane, with a manner that came dangerously near to being unctuous.

B

1. It is not to be presumed that he who can speak a dead language must *a fortiori* be conversant with his own.
2. Look about you first and inquire into the characters of your new acquaintances, and, *ceteris paribus*, single out those of the most considerable rank and family.

LESSON 11

Nouns of the Fourth and Fifth Declensions. Adverbs.

Nouns of the Fourth and Fifth Declensions. The nominative singular of Latin nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in **-us**. The base may be found by dropping this ending or, more commonly, by dropping merely the **-s**. In order to distinguish Fourth-Declension nouns from masculines of the Second Declension, which also end in **-us**, the base of the former will be given along with the nominative singular.

The nominative singular of Latin nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in **-ēs**. The base may be found by dropping this ending.

The few Fourth- and Fifth-Declension nouns which appear in English have generally been borrowed either: (1) without change; or (2) Anglicized by changing the ending to silent *-e*.

LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
sinus (sinu-) 'bent surface,' 'curve'	<i>sinus</i>
speciēs 'appearance,' 'kind'	<i>species</i>
tribus (trib-) 'tribe'	<i>tribe</i>

Adverbs. A number of Latin adverbs appear in English without change in form. Although used only as adverbs in Latin, many of them have been borrowed as nouns or as adjectives.

LATIN ADVERB
aliās 'at another time'
grātīs 'without recompense'

ENGLISH LOAN WORD
alias
gratis

VOCABULARY

gradus (grad- or gradu-) 'step'
seriēs 'row,' 'chain'

sinus (sinu-) 'curve'
speciēs 'appearance,' 'kind'

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *arc*, *circa*, *congeries*, *interim*, *item*, *rite*, *verbatim*.
2. General Vocabulary Work: Find five English loan words derived from Fourth- and Fifth-Declension nouns.
3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *cheerless*, *congeries*, *dismal*, *gay*, *gratis*, *gratuitously*, *heap*, *hydrophobia*, *interim*, *interval*, *rabies*.
4. Translate the Latin expressions **facile princeps** and **primā faciē** (ablative case, to be translated 'on'). Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use each expression in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.
5. Compare the etymological meanings of *alibi* and *arc* with their current meanings.
6. What is the linguistic relationship between *rabies* and *rage*? Which was borrowed earlier? Does either word show specialization or generalization of meaning?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Species, *specie*, and *spice* are triplets derived from the Latin noun *speciēs* 'appearance,' 'kind.' *Species* came into English directly from Latin; *spice*, through Old French *espice*. The meaning of *spice* seems to have been a specialization which came through trade. There were various kinds (*speciēs*) of these aromatic vegetable substances, and *speciēs* came to be used of the substances themselves. The noun *specie*, used in English for

'coin,' as opposed to paper money, comes from the phrase in *speciē* 'in coin,' a meaning which *speciēs* took on in Late Latin.

Dismal originally meant 'evil days.' In medieval times, it was believed that there were two days of ill omen in each month. These were called in Old French *dis mal*, from the Latin *diēs mali* 'evil days.' The expression was later misunderstood and used, first as an adjective with the noun 'days'—i.e., *dismal days*—and then with other nouns.

Spīritus 'breath' has been Anglicized to *spirit*, 'the invisible breathlike part of a human being,' or 'a being as unsubstantial as the breath.' In Old French, *spīritus* became *esprit*, which English borrowed as *sprite*. *Sprightly* is simply *sprite* with the addition of our English adjective-forming suffix *-ly*; its spelling was probably changed under the influence of the numerous English words which end in *-ightly* (e.g., *nightly*, *lightly*). The Old French *esprit* has been retained in Modern French and appears in the phrase, frequently used in English, *esprit de corps* 'regard for the honor and interests of the group to which one belongs.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Our *esprit de corps* revealed itself in a jealous regard for the good name of the society.
2. The day was dark and *dismal*, full of forebodings of coming disaster.
3. The convict, masquerading under many *aliases*, chose such common names as Smith and Jones to escape detection, as he hoped.
4. The drive for the sounder preparation of officers of the merchant marine will serve the interests of the shipowners, and *pari passu* that of the government, if the government should seize the ships in time of war.
5. Among politicians, he was *facile princeps*; the others were mere satellites, at his beck and call.

6. Listen to the speaker's every word and give me a *verbatim* report.

7. We made an *interim* arrangement until all the matters involved could be carefully considered and a final agreement reached.

LESSON 12

Review

A. State which words in the following list of nouns are linguistically related and what the nature of the relationship is: *pauper, master, poor, cross, corona, sire, crux, person, mister, parson, senior, camera, crown, chamber.*

B. Choose from the parentheses the word or expression that correctly fits the context. Check your choice from your dictionary. Use the rejected word in a sentence.

1. The ship rested a moment on the (vertex, vortex) of the wave.

2. She belonged to the (alumni, alumnae) association of Vassar College.

3. He is suffering from (sinus, inflammation of the sinus).

4. Stravinsky has a (talent, genius) for orchestration.

C. From the following list of words, select a synonym or synonymous expression for each word or expression given below in parentheses: *acute, bona fide, curt, genius, in good part, lustre, map, palate, scintilla, sense, sort, sprightly, sterile, suave, vile.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. an intimate (realization of) | 5. quite to my (taste) |
| 2. to take a thing (without offense) | 6. of doubtful (distinction) |
| 3. to (shape) one's course | 7. (useless) gold |
| 4. a (bent) for blundering | 8. (blandly pleasing) manners |
| | 9. (lively) repartee |

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 10. (in-good-faith) state-
ment | 13. (shrewd) observer of
life |
| 11. (spark) of truth | 14. in some (manner) |
| 12. (rudely concise) answer | 15. (base) calumniator |

D. The following passage contains sixteen words with which you should be familiar from your previous studies. Discover these words. Recast the passage substituting synonyms or synonymous expressions for each of the familiar words.

The lecturer focused his entire attention on the minutiae of the course. Not a scintilla of wit, not a crisp statement relieved the tedium of the work. The result was that we had no stimulus to urge us on to study anything but the elements of the subject, and the course soon began to pall upon us. Had he been a person of a different sort, with some intellectual stamina, with a modicum of human feeling, he might have aroused our interest; but his dullness, his genius for slipping into grave fallacies whenever he attempted to reason, and his total lack of spirit, brought us to the limit of forbearance.

CHAPTER III

Compound Nouns and Adjectives

Word formation is a process in which prefixes or suffixes or both are attached to certain words or to their bases to form other words. We call such words *compounds*, since they are composed of more than one element. From the English noun *boy*, for example, by adding the native suffix *-ish*, the compound adjective *boyish* is formed.

The present chapter introduces the study of word formation in Latin and in English. In it are discussed the suffixes and prefixes that may be attached to Latin nouns and adjectives, the changes in meaning they effect, and the forms they take in English.¹

Prefixes and suffixes modify the meaning of the word or the base to which they are attached. The *etymological meaning* of a compound word may be found by combining the meaning of the prefix and suffix with that of its base. The etymological meaning in most cases differs, often rather widely, from the *current meaning*, which may be found only by consulting the dictionary. The etymological meaning, however, has a close and direct connection with the current meaning; not only does it contain the seed from which the current meaning has sprung, but the peculiar flavor of any compound may be ascertained only from it. Thus *vital*, composed of *vit-* (the base of the Latin noun *vita* 'life') and the suffix *-al* (from *-ālis* 'pertaining to'),

¹ Word formation also includes multiple-base compounds—i.e., words formed from two bases. The discussion of these is reserved until the end of the chapter.

means etymologically 'pertaining to life.' In certain contexts, this is also the current meaning, as in the expression "a *vital* wound"—that is, "a wound which endangers life." But *vital* is commonly used today in the sense of 'essential.' This meaning is simply the outgrowth of the etymological meaning 'pertaining to life,' for anything that 'pertains to life' is *ipso facto* 'essential.' Furthermore, the current meaning of *vital* is not simply 'essential.' A trace of its etymological sense survives, for it means 'as essential as the things which govern existence.'

Suffixes are of three kinds: (1) those which are used to form adjectives; (2) those which are used to form nouns; and (3) those which are used to form verbs. In the present chapter, only the first two kinds concern us. It is important to remember that, in Latin, suffixes are almost always attached to the bases of words, never to complete words. In some instances, the combination of the elements was made, not in Latin, but in English or in French. Such compounds will be indicated by an asterisk (*).

LESSON 13

Compound Adjectives: Noun or Adjective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix

Various suffixes may be attached to the bases of nouns or adjectives to form compound adjectives.

1. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-ālis** > English **-al** 'of,' 'belonging to,' 'pertaining to,' 'having the character of,' 'appropriate to.'

LATIN NOUN OR ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
margō 'edge,' 'border'	margin-	marginālis	<i>marginal</i>
digitus 'finger,' 'toe'	digit-	digitālis	<i>digital</i>
brūtus 'irrational'	brūt-	brūtālis	<i>brutal</i>

When a noun or adjective base has the consonant *l* in either of its last two syllables, the Latin suffix **-āris** is generally used instead of **-ālis**, appearing in English in the form **-ar** and, in a few cases, in the form **-ary**.

LATIN NOUN OR ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
īnsula 'island'	īnsul-	īnsulāris	<i>insular</i>
vulgus 'common people'	vulg-	vulgāris	<i>vulgar</i>
similis 'like'	simil-	similāris	<i>similar</i>
mīles 'soldier'	mīlit-	mīlitāris	<i>military</i>

VOCABULARY

caput, capitis (n) 'head'	mōs, mōris 'habit,' 'custom' (plural 'character')
lēx, lēgis 'law'	nōmen, nōminis (n) 'name'
līber, liberī 'free'	rādīx, rādīcis 'root'
littera 'letter' (of the alphabet)	socius 'associate,' 'ally'

EXERCISES

(Read carefully the Instructions on Procedure, pages xiii-xv, especially instructions on word formation.)

1. Words for Special Study: *carnal*, *integral*, *marital*, *mores*, *secular*.

2. Word Formation: 'kingly,' 'pertaining to the eyes,' 'hearty,' 'starry,' 'deathly,' 'outward.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *capital*, *carnal*, *cordial*, *figurative*, *generous*, *illicit*, *legal*, *liberal*, *literal*, *major*, *parsimonious*, *spiritual*, *unfriendly*.

4. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between: *venal* and *venial*; *marital* and *martial*; *linear* and *lineal*.

5. In Latin, *rīvālis* meant 'on the same stream (*rīvus*).' Compare this meaning with the current meaning of *rival*.

6. Among other things, *cardinal* means 'church dignitary' and 'small scarlet bird.' Trace the development of these two meanings from that of the Latin word from which *cardinal* was ultimately borrowed.

7. What is the linguistic relationship between *loyal* and *legal*?

8. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "digital dexterity"; "lateral branch of a family"; "lineal descendant"; "literal interpretation"; "venial sin"?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

English has borrowed a number of Latin adjectives ending in *-ālis* as nouns—e.g., *morale*, the doublet of *moral*; *finale*, the doublet of *final*; and *personnel*, the doublet of *personal*. *Capitālis* 'pertaining to the head' is the source of three English nouns. Its neuter form *capitāle*, used as a noun meaning 'chief property,' yielded *cattle*, borrowed through Norman-French. Through Old French, *capitāle* became *chattel*, which we now commonly use in the plural in the sense of 'movable goods.' *Capital*, although the last borrowing, is the most conservative semantically; as an adjective it retains the Latin meaning 'chief,' 'important,' while as a noun it preserves the Latin nominal sense 'chief property.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Certain views set forth in the book were *insular*, not raised above the prejudices and predilections of the author.
2. A few of the posthumous works of the composer were *secular*, although he had, during his lifetime, been known only as a writer of church music.
3. Subsequent investigations have shown that the indicted man is *venal*; he may be bought by the highest bidder.

B

1. Prudence is a good wife, and knows thoroughly that skill of the purse is the cardinal virtue of her life.
2. Engaging as his playing was at times, a digital clumsiness marred the general effect.
3. Recent investigations into the life of the poet have gone a long way toward a demonstration of his radical badness.

LESSON 14

Compound Adjectives: Noun or Adjective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix (*Cont'd*)

Noun or Adjective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix (Cont'd). In addition to **-ālis** (**-āris**), the following suffixes may also be attached to noun or adjective bases to form compound adjectives.

2. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-ilis** > English *-ile*, rarely *-il* 'of,' 'belonging to,' 'pertaining to,' 'having the character of,' 'appropriate to.'

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
hostis 'enemy'	host-	hostilis	hostile

3. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-ānus** > English *-an*, *-ane* 'of,' 'belonging to,' 'pertaining to,' etc.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
urbs 'city'	urb-	urbānus	urban, urbane

Occasionally the vowel **-i-** is inserted between the base and the suffix **-ānus** to connect the two elements of the word.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
Stentōr, a herald, in the <i>Iliad</i> , with a powerful voice	Stentor-	*Stentoriānus	stentorian

VOCABULARY

civis 'citizen'
gēns, gentis 'clan,' 'race'
medius 'middle'

servus 'slave,' 'servant'
urbs, urbis 'city'

EXERCISES

1. Word Formation: 'boyish,' 'youthful,' 'manly,' 'old-man-nish,' 'worldly.'

2. Form five Latin adjectives by attaching the suffix *-ilis* or *-ānus* to the bases of appropriate nouns or adjectives listed in the General Vocabulary. Form an English loan word from each, and determine its pronunciation and current meaning.

3. List ten adjectives containing the suffix *-an* formed from the names of countries.

4. Synonyms and Antonyms: *civil*, *crude*, *cruel*, *gentle*, *germane*, *humane*, *merciful*, *mundane*, *otherworldly*, *relevant*, *urbane*, *violent*.

5. Distinguish semantically between: *german* and *germane*; *urban* and *urbane*. What is the linguistic relationship between each pair of adjectives?

6. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "febrile effort"; "stentorian voice"; "mundane affairs"; "cousin-german"?

7. Compare the etymological meaning of *veteran* with its current meaning.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Gentile, *genteel*, *gentle*, and *jaunty* all come from the Latin adjective *gentilis* 'of the (same) clan (*gēns, gentis*),' later 'of one of the great Roman families.' *Jaunty*, as its form indicates, came into English through French. Vestiges of the original meaning of the adjective may still be found in each of the loan words. For instance, the adjective *gentle* meant 'well-born' when it was first borrowed by English, a meaning still preserved in the expression "of *gentle* blood" and in similar expressions. A *gentleman*, in point of fact, was originally 'a man of good family.' *Gentle* derives its current meaning from its application to the characteristics which supposedly accompany high birth.

The suffix *-ānus* passed through Old French to appear in English in the form *-ain*—e.g., in *mountain*, from *montānus* (*mōns*, *montis* ‘mountain’); in *certain*, from *certānus* (*certus* ‘determined’); and in *villain*, from **villānus* (*villa* ‘farm’). The changes in meaning of the noun *villain* are interesting. **Villānus* was specialized in Latin to mean ‘a slave attached to a country place.’ From it, *villain* was derived with a shift in meaning to ‘farm laborer.’ From this point, *villain* suffered a steady degeneration in meaning. It came to be used as a general term of contempt for people who did not belong to the gentry and, finally, of anyone who was guilty of rascality, a characteristic, supposedly, of the lower classes.

Chieftain and *captain* are linguistically related. The Latin noun *caput*, *capitis* ‘head’ passed through Old French to appear in English as *chief*, and through Modern French to appear as *chef* ‘head cook.’ The Late Latin *capitānus* passed through Old French and became *chieftain* in English. Another Old French form, *capitain*, is responsible for the doublet *captain*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. By “*gentlemen*” I do not mean people of scented hair and perfumed handkerchiefs, but men of *gentle* blood, high-born, and generous.

2. When we draw our conclusions, we shall disregard all matters that are not *germane* to the discussion.

3. Mindful of the transitoriness of *mundane* hopes and joys, the musician turned his back upon the world and resolutely centered his thoughts on eternal salvation.

B

1. Thoreau was not easy, not ample, not urbane, not even kind.

2. Burns had no genteel timidities in the conduct of life.

3. I have been at the seaside, enjoying it, yes, but in what a doddering, senile sort of way.

LESSON 15

Compound Adjectives: Noun or Adjective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix (*Cont'd*)

Noun or Adjective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix (Cont'd). In addition to the three suffixes previously discussed, the following suffixes may also be attached to noun or adjective bases to form compound adjectives.

4. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-īnus** > English *-ine*, *-in* 'of,' 'pertaining to,' 'like,' 'characterized by'; also used to form names of chemical substances.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
sāl 'salt'	sal-	salīnus	<i>saline</i>

The suffix **-īnus** is frequently used to form adjectives from the names of animals.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
fēlēs 'cat'	fēl-	fēlīnus	<i>feline</i>

5. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-āris**¹ or **-ārius** > English *-ary* 'of,' 'pertaining to,' 'connected with.'

LATIN NOUN OR ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
auxilium 'help,' 'aid'	auxili-	auxiliārius	<i>auxiliary</i>
necesse 'necessary'	necess-	necessārius	<i>necessary</i>

¹ See Lesson 13.

Many Latin adjectives formed with the suffix **-ārius** were used as nouns denoting 'person belonging to,' 'engaged in' or 'concerned with.'

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
lapis 'stone'	lapid-	lapidārius , originally 'pertaining to stone'; later 'one who works with stones'	<i>lapidary</i>

The suffix **-ārium**, neuter singular of **-ārius**, was used to form nouns in which it has the meaning 'place for.' The suffix appears in English sometimes without change, though more commonly in the form *-ary*.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
aqua 'water'	aqu-	aquārium 'place for water'	<i>aquarium</i>
avis 'bird'	avi-	aviārium 'place for birds'	<i>aviary</i>

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study *ancillary*, *arbitrary*, *mercenary* (adjective and noun), *pecuniary*, *plenary*, *veterinary* (adjective and noun).

2. Word Formation: 'place for bees,' 'place for the sun,' 'place for the tide,' 'eaglelike,' 'asslike,' 'doglike,' 'horsey,' 'like a wild beast,' 'goatish,' 'snakelike,' 'foxy.' Do any of these adjectives show specialization or generalization of meaning?

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *ancillary*, *auxiliary*, *feline*, *guileless*, *mercenary*, *necessary*, *needful*, *stealthy*, *subsidiary*, *venal*.

4. From what Latin adjective is *plumber* derived? (See Supplementary Notes.)

5. What are the doublets of *legionary* and *voluntary*? (See Supplementary Notes.)

6. Compare the etymological meaning of *canary* with its current meaning. (See *canārius* in the General Vocabulary.)
7. Find three given names which contain the suffix **-īnus**.
8. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "mercenary motive"; "mercenary troops"; "pecuniary difficulties"; "arbitrary ruler"?
9. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *sanguine* and *sanguinary*.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The suffixes **-ārius** and **-ārium** pass through Old French to appear in English as **-er** with the meaning 'person or thing concerned with.' Thus *carpenter* comes from *carpentārius* 'person concerned with wagons (*carpentum*)'; *terrier*, from *terrārius* '(a dog) concerned with the earth (*terra*).' Terriers were originally used by hunters to dig for small burrowing animals. *Danger* goes back ultimately to **dominus** 'lord.' The Late Latin neuter form ***dominiārium** 'that which pertains to a lord's power (**dominium**)' became *dangier* in Old French and *danger* in English. Originally, it meant 'authority' in English, and from this sense of the word the current meaning was later derived. Occasionally, **-ārius** passes through Old French to appear in English as **-eer**—e.g., in *mountaineer* (***montānārius**) and *privateer* (***privātārius**).

The suffix **-ārius** passes through French to appear in English as **-aire**—e.g., *doctrinaire* (***doctrinārius**).

Esquire comes from **scūtārius** 'pertaining to a shield (**scūtum**),' later 'shield bearer.' The initial *e-* in *esquire* requires some explanation. In Vulgar Latin, the letter *e* was placed before many Latin words beginning with *s* followed by a consonant. Thus **scūtārius** became ***escūtārius** in Vulgar Latin and ultimately yielded *esquire*. This fact explains the appearance of the letter *e-* in *especial*, *estate*, and *esprit*, the doublets of *special*, *state*, and *spirit*, respectively (see Supplementary Notes, Lesson 11).

Mint, *money*, and *monetary* are linguistically related. The temple of the goddess Juno Moneta, at Rome, was used for the coining of money. In Anglo-Saxon, the cult title **Monēta** became

mynet, whence *mint*; while in Old French, it became *moneie*, the ancestor of *money*. The cult title **Monēta** in itself had no etymological connection whatever with the coining of money but was derived from the Latin verb *monēre* 'to warn.' *Monetary*, of course, comes from *monētārius*, an adjective formed from **Monēta**.

Cavalier and *chevalier* are really the same word. Both come ultimately from *caballārius* 'horseman,' originally an adjective formed from *caballus*, the Vulgar Latin word for 'horse' ('nag' in Classical Latin). The former entered English through Italian and French, the latter through Old French. *Cavalry* and *chivalry* are ultimately derived from *caballus* also.

An *usher* was originally a 'doorman.' The noun comes from the Latin *ōstiārius* 'one concerned with a door (*ōstium*).'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Sometimes a fox came near to my window, attracted by the light, barked a *vulpine* curse at me and then retreated.

2. Along the shelf of the shepherd's cottage were ranged bottles and canisters of simple preparations pertaining to *ovine* surgery and physic.

3. The theories of the new governor seemed, on first blush, to be sound enough; but when confronted with the practical difficulties that faced him, he showed himself to be a mere *doctrinaire*.

4. When through an overplus of *sanguine* spirits I beam upon the world, every beggar on the streets is irresistibly drawn toward me.

5. My suggestions are not offered as substitutes for the original proposals but are merely *ancillary* to those proposals and are intended to supplement, clarify, and strengthen them.

B

1. As the speaker warmed to his subject, his great leonine face came alive, his eyes flashed, and the fighter in him overcame the showman.

LESSON 16

Compound Adjectives: Noun or Adjective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix (*Concl'd*)

Noun or Adjective Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix (*Concl'd*). In addition to the five suffixes previously discussed, the following suffixes may also be attached to noun or adjective bases to form compound adjectives.

6. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-ōsus** > English **-ous, -ose** 'full of,' 'abounding in'; also used in Anglicizing Latin adjectives without affecting the meaning.

LATIN NOUN OR ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
cōpia 'plenty'	cōpi-	cōpiōsus	<i>copious</i>
verbum 'word'	verb-	verbōsus	<i>verbose</i>
aemulus 'rivaling'	aemul-	*aemulōsus	<i>emulous</i>

7. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-lentus** > English **-lent** 'full of,' 'given to,' 'like.' It should be noted that the suffix **-lentus**, unlike the suffixes previously studied, begins with a consonant. In order to attach a suffix beginning with a consonant to a base ending in a consonant, a *connecting vowel* is frequently inserted between the two. In words containing the suffix **-lentus**, the connecting vowel is **-u-**, **-o-**, or **-i-**.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
vīrus 'poison'	vīr-	vīrulentus	<i>virulent</i>
somnus 'sleep'	somn-	somnolentus	<i>somnolent</i>

8. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-icus** > English *-ic* 'of,' 'pertaining to'

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
classis 'class,' 'rank'	class-	classicus	<i>classic</i>

There are two suffixes spelled **-icus** in Latin: a native suffix, as in **classicus** cited above; and the Latinized form of the borrowed Greek adjective-forming suffix **-ikos**, as in **poëticus** (<Greek *poiētikós*).

VOCABULARY

fāma 'reputation'
lūbricus 'slippery'

lūmen, lūminis (n) 'light'
populus 'people'

EXERCISES

1. Adjectives for Special Study: *bellicose, classical, corpulent, histrionic, imperious, jocose, nebulous, officious, popular, tenuous*. Is there any irregularity in the formation of any of these adjectives and if so, what is it?

2. Word Formation: 'wealthy,' 'full of strength,' 'burdensome,' 'juicy,' 'harmful,' 'deceitful.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *abundant, alert, bellicose, belligerent, copious, gloomy, jocose, jocular, lucid, luminous, morose, opaque, scanty, slumberous, somnolent, venomous, virulent*.

4. Using all the adjective-forming suffixes studied up to this point, form seven English adjectives from the following nouns: **servus** 'slave,' **speciēs** 'appearance,' **elementum** 'first principle,' **mōs, mōris** 'custom.' Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each.

5. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "vertiginous music"; "virulent abuse"; "tenuous attachment"; "posthumous fame"?

6. Analyze etymologically the meaning and spelling of *posthumous*. (See *postumus* in the General Vocabulary.)

7. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between: *ingenious* and *ingenuous*; *famous* and *notorious*.

8. Analyze the meaning of *humorous* in the following quotation from Shakespeare's *As You Like It*: "Yet such now is the Duke's condition, that he misconstrues all that you have done. The Duke is *humorous* . . ." (See Supplementary Notes.)

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Humorous and *bilious* owe their current meanings to the influence of ancient medical theory. For many centuries it was believed that the body was composed of four liquids or "humors" (*hūmor* 'liquid')—namely blood, phlegm, choler (yellow bile), and melancholy (black bile). A proper mixture of these four humors caused an even temperament, while an excess of any one of the four was believed to effect changes in behavior. Thus, if a man was chronically irascible, he was said to be *bilious*—i.e., he had an excess of bile (*bīlis*) rather than an equal proportion of the four humors. If he was bright and cheerful, he was said to be *sanguine*, since brightness of temper and cheerfulness were believed to result from a surplus of blood (*sanguis, sanguinis*). One who was moody and had a temperament that shifted readily was thought to have unequal amounts of the four humors and was consequently called *humorous*. Since an excess of any of the four humors could cause a person to be eccentric in speech or in conduct, *humorous* assumed the meaning 'eccentric'; and since people who are eccentric are frequently the butt of jokes and ridicule, *humorous* finally took on its current meaning.

Italics is ultimately derived from *Ītalicus* 'of Italy (*Ītalia*). The type is so called from the fact that it was first made and used at Venice by Aldus Manutius, about 1500.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. In spite of his years, the old scholar, having lived a cloistered existence, was as *ingenuous* as a child.
2. We soon realized that his *bellicose* attitude was bound to stir up feelings of hostility.
3. There was an *imperious* manner about the man that showed how insolent and overbearing he really was by nature.

4. I was *emulous* of my friend's industry and powers of application, but I did not set myself up to rival him in attainment, nor had I any feelings of jealousy for his genuine accomplishments.

5. Some of the sketches are full of *curious* beauty, that remote beauty which may be apprehended only by those who have sought it carefully.

6. The old man was completely bowed down under the *onerous* tasks that had been assigned to him.

7. The painter was famous for depicting his women in *somnolent* attitudes — drowsy, luxurious creatures with the blood moving sluggishly through their veins.

8. There emanated from the man a *noxious* influence that blighted all who came in contact with him.

B

1. I cannot walk home from the office but some officious friend offers his unwelcome courtesies in order to accompany me.

2. If certain critics were as clear-sighted as they are malignant, how great would be the benefit from their virulent writings.

3. Venomous essences, artificially brewed, were hardly necessary to bring Faust to a new life.

LESSON 17

Prefixes

In addition to suffixes, which are attached to the bases of words to form compounds, certain elements called *prefixes* may be placed before words or bases. A word with a prefix may contain a suffix as well. Thus *subnormal* 'below the normal' is composed of the prefix *sub-*, meaning 'below,' 'under'; *norm-*, base of the Latin noun *nōrma* 'standard'; and the suffix *-al* < *-ālis*, Latin adjective-forming suffix.

Latin prefixes are used primarily with verbs, as will appear later. We shall here limit ourselves to a study of those prefixes which may be attached to nouns and adjectives.

PREFIXES

ab- 'from,' 'away,' 'away from'	inter- 'between'
com-, con-, col-, co- (basic form <i>cum</i>) 'with'	intrā- 'within'
dē 'down (from),' 'off'	per- 'through'
ex-, ē- 'out (of)'	sub- 'under'
in-, il-, im-, ir- 'not'	super- 'above'

Most Latin prefixes were originally prepositions. Many of these prepositions appear in Latin phrases which have been adopted by English without change. Of those listed above, **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, and **ex** govern the ablative case (cf. Question 4 below); **inter**, **intrā**, and **per** govern the accusative case; and **sub** and **super** sometimes govern the ablative case and sometimes the accusative.

ab initiō 'from (ab) the beginning (**initiō**, ablative case of **initium**)'
per annum 'through or by (per) the year (**annum**, accusative case of **annus**)'

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *aborigine, commerce, congenial, devious, impervious, interregnum, intramural, supercilious.*

2. Word Formation: 'under the earth,' 'deathless,' 'out of the flock,' 'away from the standard.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *aborigine, arrogant, congenial, devious, diffident, egregious, flagrant, impenetrable, impervious, kindred, native, straight, supercilious.*

4. Translate the following Latin expressions: **ab ōvō; dē novō; ex parte; sub rosā.** Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use each expression in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application. Form a compound adjective from the elements contained in the phrase **per annum.**

5. Distinguish in meaning between *intrastate* and *interstate.*

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

In a number of compounds, the prefixes are scarcely recognizable because of changes that took place in Old French. We have already seen (cf. Lesson 15) that an *aquarium* is etymologically 'a place for water.' Through Old French, ***aquāria**, the feminine adjective used as a noun, became *ewer* 'pitcher.' Correspondingly, ***exaquāria** 'a place for (carrying) water out' became *sewer*. *Enemy* is closely related to *inimical* and really means 'one who is unfriendly.' It is derived from **inimicus**, a compound adjective made up of **in-** 'not' and **amicus** 'friendly.' *To scamper* is 'to get out of the field.' Originally, it meant 'to flee,' and was used of armies leaving the field of battle in flight. The verb is derived ultimately from **ex-** 'out of' and **campus** 'field.' *To escape* is really 'to take off one's cloak.' It is a compound of **ex-** and **cappa** 'cloak.' *Companion* is 'one who breaks bread (**pānis**) with (**com-**) someone.' A thing is *preposterous*, etymologically, when it, although naturally

coming 'after (*posterus*),' is suddenly reversed and placed 'before (*prae*-).'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. His temperament, his community of interests and tastes, gave promise that he would be a *congenial* companion.

2. Everywhere his stubborn conservatism showed him to be *impervious* to new ideas.

3. The *aboriginal* man within us, the cave dweller, comes to the surface every now and then.

4. The members of the commission were accused of having made an *ex parte* decision in the dispute and having acted from prejudice.

5. Contrary to all the known facts, the newspaper made the *preposterous* statement that England was fast becoming a second-rate power.

6. Hardly had the President breathed his last when a committee was set up to direct the college during the *interregnum*.

7. My having divulged the secret proved, in the disastrous sequel, to be an *egregious* blunder.

8. After many hours of fruitless bickering, the committee recessed for the day. On their return, they started discussions *de novo* and in a happier mood.

B

1. The devious procedure of my partner and his unwillingness to hold to the long-established principles of the firm finally led to a dissolution of our relationship.

2. The wisest of philosophers is often the most egregious of donkeys.

3. The junior pilot, a fragile, taciturn fellow, greets us always with a faintly supercilious smile.

LESSON 18

Compound Nouns: Noun Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix

Certain suffixes may be used to form compound nouns. These suffixes include: (a) those which may be attached to noun bases; (b) those which may be attached to adjective bases; and (c) those which may be attached to either. We shall consider (a) first.

(a) *Noun Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix.*

1. The following suffixes may be attached to noun bases to form diminutive nouns:

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Noun Base +	-culus	-cula	-culum
Noun Base +	-ellus	-ella	-ellum
Noun Base +	-illus	-illa	-illum
Noun Base +	-olus	-ola	-olum
Noun Base +	-ulus	-ula	-ulum

It should be noted that each suffix has three endings, one for each of the three genders. With a few exceptions, masculine forms of the suffixes are attached to masculine nouns, feminine forms to feminine nouns, and neuter forms to neuter nouns. When the suffix **-culus** is attached to a base ending in a consonant, a connecting vowel, usually **-i-**, is used (cf. Lesson 16).

Diminutive nouns enter English unchanged in form or they are Anglicized by dropping the ending or by changing the ending to silent **-e**. Diminutive nouns frequently lose their diminutive force in English.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DIMINUTIVE NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
rēte 'net'	rēt-	rēticulum	reticule, ret- icle
pannus 'cloth,' 'rag'	pann-	pannellus	panel
cōdex 'book,' 'code'	cōdic-	cōdicillus	codicil
gladius 'sword'	gladi-	gladiolus	gladiolus
nōdus 'knot'	nōd-	nōdulus	nodule

If you observe the popular pronunciation of *veteran* and *interesting*, you will find that they are often pronounced "vetran" and "intresting" with a complete suppression of the unaccented vowels. This phenomenon was especially common in Vulgar Latin and in Old French. In both these languages, unaccented vowels were disregarded in pronunciation and, consequently, in spelling. It is particularly noticeable in diminutives, many of which contain unaccented vowels.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DIMINUTIVE NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
artus 'joint'	art-	artīculus	article
scrūpus 'sharp stone'	scrūp-	scrūpulus	scruple

If a base ends in a consonant plus **-r-**, the **-r-** is dropped before the diminutive suffix **-ellus** is attached.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DIMINUTIVE NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
scalprum 'scalper,' 'knife'	scalpr-	scalpellum	scalpel

The diminutive ending *-et* (or *-ette*), borrowed from Old French, is as important as the Latin diminutive suffixes listed above. It is widely used in English, being attached to the bases of Latin nouns and almost always retaining its full diminutive force—e.g., *coronet* 'little crown (*corōna*),' *turret* 'little tower (*turris*).'

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *cerebellum*, *cupola*, *fascicle*, *granule*, *libelous*, *molecular*, *particular*, *tabernacle*.
2. Word Formation: 'little pebble,' 'little belly,' 'little shade,' 'little form,' 'little ball.'
3. What irregularity is there in the formation of *corpuscle*?
4. Analyze *circlet* and *rivulet*. What have they in common from the point of view of composition?
5. List five given names which are diminutive in form.
6. What is the linguistic relationship between *aureole* and *oriole*?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Many diminutives were so completely changed in Old French that their original form is now scarcely recognizable. *Lentil*, for example, is borrowed from *lenticula* 'little lentil (*lēns*, *lentis*).' *Panel* (*pannellus*) is really 'little cloth (*pannus* 'cloth,' 'rag').' *Pane* is derived directly from *pannus*. *Satchel* (*saccellus*) is 'little sack (*saccus*).' *Lintel* comes from **līmitellum* 'little boundary (*līmes*, *līmitis*),' *level* from *lībella* 'little level (*lībra*),' and *damsel* from *domnicella*, ultimately a diminutive of *domina* 'mistress.' *Pommel*, etymologically, means 'little apple'; it is derived from **pōmellum*, diminutive of *pōmum* 'apple.' We apply the term today to a rounded knob, as on the hilt of a sword, or to the knoblike protuberance at the front and top of a saddlebow. The *pommel* on a sword was frequently used in beating an adversary, so today we also speak of *pommeling* an opponent. *Cutlet* is closely related to *coast* and is actually a double diminutive; it is derived from a diminutive of *costa* 'rib,' 'side' (whence English *coast*) and the French-derived diminutive suffix *-ette*.

Pūpa 'girl,' 'doll,' borrowed without change as a zoölogical term, has also given us, through French, *puppy* and its shortened form *pup*. In addition, it has yielded a whole series of derivatives from its diminutive forms. A masculine diminutive *pūpillus* 'little boy' has given us *pupīl* 'schoolboy.' A feminine diminutive *pūpilla* 'little girl' has given us *pupīl* 'center of the eye,' perhaps so named

because of the doll-like images that appear there. *Puppet* is merely *pūpa* and the French-derived diminutive suffix *-et*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Every statement in the letter was *libelous*, and the victim was justified in seeking redress for the defamation of his character.
2. No one could have been more *scrupulous* in his attention to the details of the task assigned to him.
3. He had not had a play produced for the last twenty years, but the *aureole* of the hundred plays he had written was about his poor bald head.

B

1. If a man has the patience to plod through the book, he will come upon dainty, colorful vignettes—word pictures that might have stepped down from an artist's canvas.
2. The pilot's array of vesicles, containing medicine of all sorts, reminded me of the shelves in a barber's shop.
3. He did not scruple to hit below the belt.

LESSON 19

Compound Nouns: Noun Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix (*Concl'd*); Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix

(a) *Noun Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix* (*Concl'd*). In addition to the diminutive-forming suffixes, the following suffix may also be attached to noun bases to form compound nouns.

2. Noun base plus the Latin suffix **-ātus** > English **-ate** 'office of,' 'period of office of,' 'holder of office of,' 'group engaged in some common action,' 'group characterized by some quality.'

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
prīnceps 'chief'	prīncip-	prīncipātus	<i>prīncipate</i>

(b) *Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix*. Several noun-forming suffixes may be attached to adjective bases. These bases are of two kinds: (1) bases of simple adjectives; and (2) bases of compound adjectives which were originally formed from noun bases with the use of adjective-forming suffixes.

1. Adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-itās** (genitive **-itātis**) > English **-ity**, forming abstract nouns.

LATIN ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
probus 'good,' 'honest'	prob-	probitās	probity
vēnālis (vēnum 'sale' + -ālis) 'venal'	vēnāl-	vēnālītās	venality

With the bases of adjectives ending in **-ius**, the suffix **-etās** (genitive **-etātis**) is used instead of **-itās** (genitive **-itātis**).

LATIN ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
varius 'different'	vari-	varietās	variety

2. Adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-itūdō** (genitive **-itūdinis**) > English **-itude**, forming abstract nouns.

LATIN ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
certus 'certain'	cert-	certitūdō	certitude

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *abnormality, amenity, beatitude, comity, generosity, multitudinous, novitiate, paucity, preciousity, sobriety, vicissitude*. What is the linguistic relationship between *multitudinous* and *plural*? (See **multus** in the General Vocabulary.)

2. Word Formation: 'group of old men,' 'highness,' 'fullness,' 'wideness,' 'manliness.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *assurance, certitude, dubiety, honesty, indecorum, mercenary, probity, propriety, redundancy, venal, verbosity*.

4. Form at least three English words, with and without prefix and suffixes, from each of the following Latin nouns and adjectives: **proprius** 'one's own,' **aequus** 'fair,' **cīvis** 'citizen,' **urbis**, **urbis** 'city,' **verbum** 'word.' Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each word thus formed.

5. Translate the Latin expression **infrā dignitātem**. Deter-

mine its pronunciation, current meaning, and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use it in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.

6. What is the linguistic relationship between *dignity* and *dainty*?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Two Latin nouns denoting "office" or "group" have entered English disguised in their passage through Old French. The first, *county*, is derived from *comitātus* 'group of companions,' 'imperial escort' (*comes*, *comitis* originally meaning 'companion' but later 'count'). The second is *duchy*, which comes from *ducātus*, a formation from *dux*, *ducis* 'leader,' later 'duke.' *Ducat* is an interesting doublet of *duchy*. It is believed that *ducat* was first applied to certain coins minted by Roger II (1093-1154), Duke of Apulia, which bore the inscription: *Sit tibi, Chrīste, datus, quem tū regis iste ducātus*. 'To Thee, O Christ, let that duchy which you rule be dedicated.' The word spread and came into general use.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Let us choose, for public trust, men whose *probity* and strength of character have stood the test of time.

2. I certainly shall not support the candidacy of anyone about whom there is the slightest whisper of *venality*.

3. On you who have mastered the arts of ingratiating lies the task of preserving the *amenities* of the occasion for the whole family.

4. No man, to my knowledge, has reached a more gracious old age after the many *vicissitudes* of so long and stormy a life.

5. Everyone of us, at some time during his life, has made a show of *sobriety* and moderation in his conduct.

6. College men too often show crudity and boorishness, rather than the *urbanity* one would naturally expect of them.

B

1. Of all ebriosity, who does not prefer to be intoxicated by the air he breathes?

2. He insisted that it is as idle to rage against man's fatuity as to hope that he will ever be less a fool.

3. Even where there is no cordiality, there is always a juxtaposition of the different classes.

4. No one, no matter how careful he may be, has been innocent of some breach of decorum, some slip of the moment that was *infra dignitatem*.

5. No one is disposed to examine with too great particularity reports concerning the lapses of his friends.

6. This rag of a veteran, in spite of his poverty, lived to the last in the plenitude of all that is best in man.

7. Literary critics often display a preciosity in their reviews that is calculated to conceal the poverty of their thoughts.

LESSON 20

Compound Nouns: Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix (*Concl'd*); Noun or Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix

(b) *Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix* (*Concl'd*). In addition to the two suffixes discussed in the previous lesson, the following suffix may also be attached to adjective bases to form compound nouns.

3. Adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-itia** > English **-ice**, forming abstract nouns.

LATIN ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
malus 'evil,' 'ill'	mal-	malitia	<i>malice</i>

(c) *Noun or Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix*. Several noun-forming suffixes may be attached to noun and adjective bases.

1. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-mōnia** or **-mōnium** > English **-mony**, forming abstract nouns.

LATIN NOUN OR ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
pater 'father'	patr-	patrimōnium	<i>patrimony</i>
ācer 'sharp'	ācr-	ācrimōnia	<i>acrimony</i>

2. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-ia** > English **-ia**, **-y**, forming abstract nouns.

LATIN NOUN OR ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
mīles 'soldier'	mīlit-	mīlitia	militia
custōs 'guard'	custōd-	custōdia	custody
memor 'mindful'	memor-	memoria	memory

3. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-ismus** > English *-ism*, forming abstract nouns in which the suffix has the meaning 'attachment to,' 'adherence to,' 'state of,' 'belief in,' 'doctrine of,' 'practice of,' 'characteristic of.'

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
ego 'I'	ego-	*egoismus	egoism

4. Noun or adjective base plus the Latin suffix **-ista** > English *-ist*, forming agent nouns in which the suffix has the meaning 'one who believes in,' 'one who is an adherent of,' 'one who advocates to an extreme.'

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
ego 'I'	ego-	*egoista	egoist

The suffixes **-ismus** and **-ista** are not native Latin suffixes, although they are often attached to the bases of Latin words. As we shall see later, they are Latinized forms of two Greek noun-forming suffixes.

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *avarice, capitalism, colony, humanism, infamy, justice, matrimony, nationalism, notice, nepotism, sanctimony, testimony*. Wherever possible, form an English adjective to accompany each noun.

2. Word Formation: 'one concerned with flowers,' 'one concerned with the teeth,' 'belief in God,' 'a composer of stories.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *acrimony, altruism, asperity,*

avaricious, egoism, extravagant, good will, malice, parsimonious, resentment.

4. Distinguish in meaning between *egoism* and *egotism*. What irregularity is there in the formation of the latter?

5. Analyze *totalitarianism*, giving: (a) the Latin word from which the base is derived; and (b) the Latin form and meaning of each suffix.

6. Justify the current meaning of *fascism* in the light of its etymological meaning. (See also *fascisti*.)

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The suffix **-itia** appears in English without change in the given name *Letitia*. The Latin **laetitia** means 'joy'; it is made up of **laet-**, base of the adjective **laetus**, and the suffix **-itia**. In Old French, **-itia** became **-esse**, a form which appears in English as **-ess**. Thus *duress* is ultimately derived from **dūritia** (**dūrus** 'hard') and *largess* from ***largitia** (**largus** 'copious'). *Riches* is not a plural of *rich*; the ending **-es** goes back to the Latin **-itia**, as its spelling *richesse* in Old French shows.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

He had a genius for telling incredible stories about himself—a *fabulist* with a touch of the liar.

B

1. Germany seeks to impose authoritarian and totalitarian government on the world by military aggression.

2. The singer's histrionism has matured and, while he is still far from being a great actor, at least he brings dignity to the part.

3. In merry England, the riches of the earth are not broadcast largess as I see they are here in the tropics.

LESSON 21

Multiple-Base Compounds: Descriptive Compounds. Latin Numerals

Multiple-Base Compounds: Descriptive' Compounds. We have heretofore treated only compounds made up of a single word or base and of a prefix or suffix or both. Compounds may also be formed by uniting two bases. Words so formed are therefore called *multiple-base compounds*.

Multiple-base compounds are divided into two classes: (1) descriptive compounds; and (2) dependent compounds. Since dependent compounds contain verb bases, we shall postpone the study of these words until we have taken up the English derivatives of Latin verbs.

Descriptive compounds consist of an adjective or an adverbial base (occasionally a noun base) followed by a noun base. The first base modifies or "describes" the second; hence the name. Thus *equinox* is composed of *equ-*, base of the Latin adjective **aequus** 'equal'; *-i-*, connecting vowel; and *-nox*, Latin noun **nox**, **noctis** 'night.'

Multiple-base compounds are frequently found with suffixes attached. Thus *multilateral* is composed of *mult-*, base of the Latin adjective **multus** 'much' ('many' in the plural); *-i-*, connecting vowel; *-later-*, base of the Latin noun **latus**, **lateris** 'side'; and *-al* < **-ālis**, Latin adjective-forming suffix.

Note that, in both *equinox* and *multilateral*, the first or adjective base modifies the second or noun base.

*Latin Numerals.*¹

CARDINALS

ūnus 1
duo 2
trēs 3
quattuor 4
quīnque 5
sex 6
septem 7
octō 8
novem 9
decem 10
centum 100
mīlle 1,000

ORDINALS

prīmus 'first'
secundus 'second'
tertius 'third'
quārtus 'fourth'
quīntus 'fifth'
sextus 'sixth'
septimus 'seventh'
octāvus 'eighth'
nōnus 'ninth'
decimus 'tenth'
centē(n)simus $\frac{1}{100}$
mīllē(n)simus $\frac{1}{1,000}$

DISTRIBUTIVES

singulī '1 each'	novēnī '9 each'
bīnī '2 each'	dēnī '10 each'
ternī or trīnī '3 each'	quīnquāgēnī '50 each'
quaternī '4 each'	sexāgēnī '60 each'
quīnī '5 each'	septuāgēnī '70 each'
sēnī '6 each'	octōgēnī '80 each'
septēnī '7 each'	nōnāgēnī '90 each'
octōnī '8 each'	centēnī '100 each'

NUMERAL ADVERBS

semel 'once'
bis 'twice'
ter 'three times'
sēsqui 'one and a half times'

In addition to the numerals listed above, the following combining forms are used extensively in forming multiple-base compounds:

¹ In general, only those numerals which are important from the point of view of English derivatives are listed.

bi- 'twice,' 'having 2'
tri- '3,' 'having 3'
quadr- '4,' 'having 4'

Although English has borrowed several numerals directly from Latin, and many with suffixes attached, perhaps the chief importance of numerals lies in forming multiple-base compounds. This is especially true of the cardinals **ūnus**, **quīnque** to **decem**, and the three combining forms **bi-**, **tri-**, and **quadr-**. Thus *biped* is composed of *bi-*, Latin combining form **bi-** '2'; and *-ped*, base of the Latin noun **pēs**, **pedis** 'foot.' Similarly, *quinguelateral* is composed of *quinque*, Latin cardinal **quīnque** '5'; *-later-*, base of the Latin noun **latus**, **lateris** 'side'; and *-al* < *-ālis*, Latin adjective-forming suffix.

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *binocular*, *equivocal*, *millennium*, *otocentenary*, *pusillanimous*, *tercentenary*, *unicameral*.

2. Word Formation: 'equalmindedness,' 'having many shapes,' 'having one shape,' 'state of being of one mind,' 'two-handed,' 'having three angles,' 'having five angles,' '(period of) five years,' '(animal with) 100 feet.'

3. Distinguish in meaning between: *primeval*, *medieval*, and *coeval*; *biennial* and *biannual*; *millenary* and *millinery*.

4. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "*unilateral* denunciation of treaties"; "*unicellular* organism"; "*bilateral* agreement"?

5. Translate the Latin expressions **ē plūribus ūnum** and **primā faciē**. Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use each in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The Roman year originally began with the month of March. This is evidenced by the fact that the months after June were

reckoned as the fifth, sixth, and so on. Thus the month known to us as July (named after Julius Caesar) was originally **Quintilis** (**quintus** 'fifth'), an adjective with **mēnsis** 'month' understood. The month of August (named after Augustus Caesar) was originally **Sextilis** (sc. **mēnsis**) 'sixth month.' The seventh month was, and still is, September (**septem**); the eighth, October (**octō**), and so on. The change of the first of the year from March 1 to January 1 probably took place in 153 B.C., when the consuls, the chief officers of the state, changed the time of taking office from the former to the latter date.

The names of many of our coins are derived from Latin. *Mill* ' $\frac{1}{1,000}$ of a dollar' comes ultimately from **mille** '1,000.' *Cent* ' $\frac{1}{100}$ of a dollar' is from **centum** '100.' *Dime* ' $\frac{1}{10}$ of a dollar' goes back ultimately, through Old French, to **decimus** 'a tenth part.' *Quarter* comes from **quartārius** 'a fourth part.' *Dollar* is of Germanic origin.

Deuce, the two at cards and at dice, goes back to **duo**. Its sense in such expressions as "the *deuce* take it" arose perhaps from the fact that the two at dice is the lowest throw. *Trey*, the three at cards and dice, comes from **trēs**.

Dean originally meant 'one set over ten monks.' It is derived from **decānus**, an adjective from **decem**.

Nones 'a daily church service' [not to be confused with the old Roman *nones* (**nōnae**, **-ārum**)] and *noon* are doublets, since both come from the Latin phrase **nōna hōra** 'ninth hour' or '3 P.M.' The change of meaning from 3 P.M. to 12 P.M. was caused by a shift in the *nones* from its original time, 3 P.M., to midday.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. In order to safeguard the interests of his client, the lawyer made an *equivocal* statement which could have been interpreted in two ways.

2. The *prima facie* evidence suggested that the man was culpable; but subsequent investigations proved him innocent beyond the possibility of a doubt.

3. The conception of *primeval* chaos, from which the orderly universe was born, is as old at least as Hesiod.

B

1. The use of showy, sesquipedalian words is often the mark of a pedant.

2. It would appear that the decline in the arts is coeval with material prosperity.

3. The parent has an imperfect notion of the child's character, formed in early years or during the equinoctial gales of youth.

4. The policy of the good neighbor is a policy which can never be merely unilateral. In stressing it, the American republics appreciate that it is bilateral and multilateral, and that the fair dealing which it implies must be reciprocated.

5. All people give up toys out of a pusillanimous respect for those who are a little older.

6. Mankind, after centuries of failure, is still on the brink of a thoroughly constitutional millennium.

LESSON 22

Review

A. Arrange all the suffixes you have studied thus far into six lists, as follows, indicating alongside each suffix whether it may be attached to a noun or an adjective base or to either:

1. All suffixes meaning 'of' or 'pertaining to.'
2. All suffixes meaning 'full of' or 'given to.'
3. All suffixes that form diminutive nouns.
4. All suffixes that form nouns of office.
5. All suffixes that form abstract nouns.
6. All suffixes that form agent nouns.

B. Using prefixes and suffixes, form as many English nouns and adjectives as you can from each of the following Latin words, determining the pronunciation and current meaning of each word thus formed: **genus, generis** 'kind'; **caput, capitis** 'head'; **pius** 'faithful'; **jūdex, jūdicis** 'judge.'

C. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words:

1. An animal with a two-valved shell is called a:
.....
2. The 150th and 300th anniversaries of an event are called, respectively, a:;
3. An airplane with two main supporting planes, one above the other, is called a:
4. The Greek version of the *Old Testament* made, according to the legend, by 70 scholars from Jerusalem, is called the:

5. A person who is 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 years old is called, respectively, a(n):;;;

6. A square dance is called a:

7. Four, five, and six babies born in the same labor are called, respectively:;;

8. Documents made in three, four, five, and six identical copies, corresponding in all ways, are called, respectively:;;

D. Choose from the parentheses the word that correctly fits the context. Check your choice from the dictionary. Use the rejected word in a sentence.

1. The building in which Congress holds its sessions is called the (capital, Capitol).

2. A person who is open to corrupt practices is (venal, venial).

3. Music suitable for the expression of warlike ideas is called (marital, martial).

4. That part of a military force which serves on horseback is called the (calvary, cavalry).

5. The mental state of an army is called its (moral, morale).

6. A building in which birds are confined is called an (apiary, aviary).

7. A trolley line within the confines of a city is called an (interurban, intraurban) line.

8. From her cultivated manner and speech, it was easy to see that she was of (genteel, gentle) birth.

9. The (principle, principal) reason why I talk is that I like to hear the sound of my voice.

10. It is customary to give a clergyman a (tip, honorarium) for performing a marriage ceremony.

E. From the following list of words, select one or more synonyms for each word or expression given below in parentheses: *arbitrary, bellicose, capital, capricious, cardinal, emulous, generous, genial, humane, imperious, ingenious, ingenuous, libelous, officious, plenary, posthumous, sanguinary, sanguine, scrupulous, secular, villainous.*

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. (despotic) ruler | 12. (post-mortem) reputation |
| 2. of (major) importance | 13. (naïve) child |
| 3. (full) session of Congress | 14. (cheerful) turn of mind |
| 4. (imperative) need | 15. (scoundrelly) reputation |
| 5. (nonchurch) music | 16. (whimsical) appetite |
| 6. (belligerent) mood | 17. (abundant) praise |
| 7. (engaged in rivalry) of another's example | 18. (kindly) flow of spirits |
| 8. (meddlesome) zeal | 19. man is a (changeable) animal |
| 9. (sympathetic) treatment of animals | 20. (careful) attention |
| 10. (clever) solution of a problem | 21. (defamatory) statement |
| 11. (bloody) battle | |

F. Which words in the following sentences belong to the classes of words treated in this chapter? Determine the etymology, pronunciation, and meaning of each in its context.

1. I have never heard a short speech more passionate; and the speaker's eyes were feral.

2. I turned up the dull and stinking lamp and tried to read, but its fuliginous glim haunted the pages.

3. His big cadaverous face resembled nothing so much as a skeleton in a museum.

4. The sea ran in broad heavy mounds, blue-black and vitreous.

5. When I looked into the pellucid depths of the sea, I felt myself hovering in the midst of a hollow sphere filled with light.

6. The fish darkened to ultramarine as it thrashed the deck, and its broad dorsal fin showed violet eyes.

7. The village rests on one of those rare cliffs of rufous clay and sandstone.

8. From one of the low, ferruginous cliffs of this river the jungle had been cleared.

9. Though I would not have you be a valetudinarian, I must tell you that the preservation of the best and most robust health requires some degree of attention.

10. I have seen a score of people who can silence me, but I seek one who shall make me forget or overcome the frigidities and imbecillities into which I fall.

11. I would have you know the foundations, the objects, and the insignia of the military orders of Europe.

12. Certainly sobriety is the health of the soul.

CHAPTER IV

Latin Verbs

All English verbs are *conjugated*. They have a present, past, and future tense, an active and a passive voice, an indicative and a subjunctive mood, and so forth. Latin verbs are also conjugated, but in a more complicated way, according to four schemes determined by the ending of the present infinitive. To the First Conjugation belong verbs the present infinitive of which ends in **-āre** (with a first person singular present indicative active in **-ō**); to the Second Conjugation, verbs the present infinitive of which ends in **-ēre** (with a present indicative in **-eō**); to the Third Conjugation, verbs the present infinitive of which ends in **-ere** (with a present indicative in **-ō** and **-iō**); and to the Fourth Conjugation, verbs the present infinitive of which ends in **-ire** (with a present indicative in **-iō**).

Note that there are two types of Third-Conjugation verbs, one in which the ending of the first person singular of the present indicative active is **-ō** (e.g., in **agō**) and the other in which the ending is **-iō** (e.g., in **capiō**). To enable the student to distinguish between these two types, the ending **-iō** will be added in parentheses after verbs of the type of **capiō**. The importance of this distinction will appear later.

LESSON 23

The Present Infinitive and the Perfect Participle

The Present Infinitive. The base of any present infinitive may be found by dropping the characteristic ending.

CONJU- GATION	PRESENT INDICA- TIVE ACTIVE	PRESENT INFINI- TIVE ACTIVE	CHARAC- TERISTIC ENDING	BASE
I	amō 'I love'	amāre 'to love'	-āre	am-
II	moneō 'I warn'	monēre 'to warn'	-ēre	mon-
III (a)	dūcō 'I lead'	dūcere 'to lead'	-ere	dūc-
(b)	capiō 'I take'	capere 'to take'	-ere	cap-
IV	audiō 'I hear'	audire 'to hear'	-ire	aud-

The Perfect Participle. The Latin perfect participle is passive in meaning.¹ The perfect participle of verbs of the First Conjugation is regularly formed by attaching the ending **-ātus** to the base of the present infinitive. Such regularity of formation, however, is not always to be found in verbs of the other three conjugations, although perfect participles of Second-Conjugation verbs are frequently formed by attaching the ending **-itus**, those of Third-Conjugation verbs by attaching **-tus**, and those of Fourth-Conjugation verbs by attaching **-ītus** to the base of the present infinitive. Whenever the formation of the perfect participle deviates from these rules, the participle will be given immediately following the present infinitive active. Occasionally a verb has no perfect participle. This fact

¹ Except in deponent verbs (see page 115).

will be indicated by a dash (—). The base of the perfect participle² is found by dropping the ending **-us**.

CON- JUGA- TION	PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	BASE
I	amāre 'to love'	am-	am-ātus 'having been loved'	amāt-
II	monēre 'to warn'	mon-	mon-itus 'having been warned'	monit-
III (a)	dūcere 'to lead'	dūc-	duc-tus 'having been led'	duct-
(b)	capere (-iō) 'to take'	cap-	cap-tus 'having been taken'	capt-
IV	audīre 'to hear'	aud-	aud-ītus 'having been heard'	audīt-

VOCABULARY

cēdere, cessus 'to go,' 'to yield'	solvere, solūtus 'to loosen,' 'to break up'
mergere, mersus 'to dip,' 'to plunge'	tendere, tēnsus or tentus, 'to stretch,' 'to hold a course'
movēre, mōtus 'to move'	urgēre, — 'to press'
servīre 'to serve'	vergere, — 'to bend,' 'to incline'

Translate the perfect participles into English wherever these are given. Form and translate the perfect participles wherever the formation is regular and hence the participle not given. Name the conjugation to which each verb belongs. Find its present-infinitive and perfect-participial base. The formation of English words from these verbs will be considered in the following lesson.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into Latin: 'I bite,' 'having been joined,' 'having been carved,' 'I throw,' 'having been thrown,' 'having been sharpened,' 'having been carried,' 'I limit,' 'having been fortified.'

2. Translate into English: **rogō, rogātus, mūniō, finītus, faciō, habitus, scalptus**. Find the present-infinitive and perfect-participial base of each.

² Sometimes called the *supine base*.

LESSON 24

The Present Infinitive and the Perfect Participle in English. Denominative Verbs

The Present Infinitive. The present infinitive has yielded many English verbs. In English, the present-infinitive ending is dropped or changed to silent *-e*.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
errāre 'to wander'	<i>err</i>
urgēre 'to press'	<i>urge</i>
tendere 'to stretch,' 'to hold a course'	<i>tend</i>
servīre 'to serve'	<i>serve</i>

The Perfect Participle. The perfect participle is, in form and function, an adjective of the First and Second Declension (cf. Lesson 6). The ending **-us** is used for agreement with masculine nouns, **-a** for agreement with feminine nouns, and **-um** for agreement with neuter nouns. Hence, when the perfect participle appears in English, it is first and foremost an adjective. The ending of the perfect participle, like that of the adjective, is usually dropped or changed to silent *-e* in English.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
stringere 'to draw tight'	strictus 'having been drawn tight'	<i>strict</i>
tendere 'to stretch'	tēnsus 'having been stretched'	<i>tense</i>
sēdāre 'to calm'	sēdātus 'having been calmed'	<i>sedate</i>
fīnīre 'to limit'	fīnītus 'having been limited'	<i>finite</i>

Note that, as in the case of **tendere**, both present infinitive and perfect participle may give rise to English words.

The perfect participle may give rise to verbs as well as to adjectives.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
penetrāre 'to pierce'	penetrātus 'having been pierced'	<i>penetrate</i>

Denominative Verbs. Verbs formed from a noun or an adjective are called *denominative verbs*. Such verbs usually belong to the First Conjugation and consist of the base of a noun or an adjective and the ending **-āre** of the present infinitive. Both present infinitive and perfect participle of denominative verbs have given rise to words in English, the former to verbs, the latter to adjectives and verbs.

LATIN NOUN OR ADJECTIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
arma 'weapons'	armāre 'to equip with weapons'	(armātus)	arm (verb)
laurea 'laurel wreath'	*laureāre 'to deck with laurel'	laureātus 'having been decked with laurel'	<i>laureate</i>
aequus 'equal'	aequāre 'to make equal'	aequātus 'having been made equal'	<i>equate</i>

EXERCISES

1. Verbs for Special Study: *fulminate, militate, oscillate, postulate, saturate, vacillate.*
2. Word Formation: 'to sparkle,' 'to name,' 'to place.'
3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *acute, boorish, circumstantial, fluctuate, minute, oscillate, polite, refined, scanty, shrewd, sparse, vacillate.*
4. Wherever possible, form English verbs from the present in-

finitives and English adjectives from the perfect participles of the following Latin verbs and from the verbs listed in the Vocabulary of Lesson 23: **acuere**, **acūtus** 'sharpen'; **minuere**, **minūtus** 'lessen'; **polire**, **polītus** 'polish'; **spargere**, **sparsus** 'strew'; **tacēre**, **tacītus** 'be silent.'

5. Form Latin denominative verbs from the following nouns and adjectives, giving also the perfect passive participle of each verb and, wherever possible, an English word from this participle, and determining the pronunciation and current meaning of each English word thus formed: **insula** 'island'; **liber**, **liberī** 'free'; **littera** 'letter of the alphabet'; **lūbricus** 'slippery'; **populus** 'people'; **medius** 'middle'; **vulgus** 'common people.'

6. Determine the etymology of the verb *damn*. Originally, the verb meant 'to condemn.' Theologians used it in the sense 'to doom to everlasting punishment in Hell.' What name is given to this process of change of meaning?

7. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "articulate speech"; "to mulct a person of what is his due"; "tacit understanding"; "trite remark"; "acute criticism"; "carping critic"?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The inflected forms of a few Latin verbs have been borrowed without change. **Vetō** 'I forbid' is the first person singular of the present indicative active of **vetāre**. **Crēdō** 'I believe,' the first word of the Apostles' and the Nicene Creeds, bears the same relationship to **crēdere**; it was adopted by English as a noun and given approximately the same meaning as its doublet, *creed*. *Caret*, the mark (Λ) used by writers and proofreaders to indicate that something inserted in the margin belongs in the place so marked in the text, is the third person singular of the present indicative of **carēre**, and means 'it lacks' in Latin. *Deficit*, 'it is wanting,' bears the same relationship to **dēficere** 'to want.' The third person singular present indicative active of **habitāre** 'to dwell' is **habitat**, which has shifted its meaning in English from that of a verb 'he dwells' to that of a noun *habitat* 'natural home of a plant or animal.'

Solder comes ultimately from *solidāre* 'to make solid,' a denominative verb of *solidus* 'solid.' *Solidus* is an important word from the point of view of its derivatives in English. Under the Roman emperors, it was the name of a gold coin; as such it is still preserved in England under the guise of the abbreviation 's.,' which, although translated as 'shilling,' stands for the old Latin *solidus*. Similarly, 'd.,' translated as 'pence,' stands for the Latin *dēnārius*, a silver coin of low denomination. *Soldier* comes from **solidārius*, 'one who works for *solidi* ('money').' (Cf. Supplementary Notes, Lesson 15.)

The verb *search* is closely related to *circus* and *circle*. It is derived, through Old French, from the Late Latin verb *circāre* 'to encircle,' a denominative verb of *circus* 'circle.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The speaker *fulminated* his loudest censures against all who were opposed to his views.
2. The number of poor people in the world *oscillates* rather than changes—that is, it fluctuates within fixed limits.
3. The presence of unscrupulous public officials in the city government *militates* against the efforts of the schools to inculcate correct social attitudes in their students.
4. The obstructionist tactics of the City Council have *vitiating* the Mayor's efforts for social betterment.
5. The President, throughout his administration, professed to adhere to his fundamental *creed* that the government should provide the greatest good for the greatest number.
6. The jubilation on the part of the people at the arrival of the Prime Minister in Corsica and Tunisia *mulcted* the claim of Musso-
lini to French territory of much of its force.
7. The little old lady was the very pink of propriety—*sedate*, unruffled, with the faintest perfume of lavender about her person.

B

1. The Epicureans postulated the existence of the atom as the foundation for their inferences concerning the nature of the physical universe.

2. The rush of students to courses in the social sciences has caused a partial eclipse of the more polite studies in many of our colleges and universities.

3. The writer of critical studies has to mediate between the author, whom he loves, and the public, who are certainly indifferent and frequently averse.

4. The skipper did his best to meliorate the inhuman native methods of treating dumb animals.

LESSON 25

Prefixes

We have already studied a few compound words formed by combining the base of a noun or an adjective with a prefix or a suffix or both. Prefixes and suffixes may also be attached to verb bases.

Although prefixes are occasionally used to form compound nouns (cf. Lesson 17), their chief importance lies in the formation of compound verbs.

	PREFIX	LATIN COMPOUND VERB	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
PRESENT			
INFINITIVE:	solvere 'to loos- en,' 'to free'	ab- 'from,' 'away from,' 'off'	absolvere <i>absolve</i>
PERFECT			
PARTICIPLE:	solūtus 'having been freed'	ab-	absolūtus <i>absolute</i>

When compounded with prefixes, verbs frequently depart slightly from their normal form. In such cases, the form to be used in compounds will be placed in parentheses, immediately following the regular form—e.g., **caedere**, **caesus** (-**cidere**, -**cisus**) 'to cut.'

		PREFIX	LATIN COMPOUND VERB	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
PRESENT				
INFINITIVE:	caedere 'to cut'	ex- 'out'	excīdere	<i>excide</i>
PERFECT				
PARTICIPLE:	caesus 'having been cut'	ex-	excīsus	<i>excise</i> (verb)

PREFIXES

[The basic form and meaning of each prefix will be given first in this and in subsequent lists. The other forms are used before certain consonants for the sake of euphony—e.g., *attendere* instead of 'ad*tend*ere,' *differre* instead of 'dis*fer*re,' and so on.]

ab-, abs-, ā- 'from,' 'away from,' 'off'

ad-, a-, ac-, af-, ag-, al-, an-, ap-, ar-, as-, at- 'to,' 'toward'; denotes adherence, addition or proximity; also used intensively ('very')

ante- 'before'

circum- 'around,' 'about,' 'on all sides'

com-, con-, col-, cor-, co- (*cum*) 'with,' 'together,' 'together with'; also used intensively ('very,' 'thoroughly')

contrā- (> *contro-*, *counter-*) 'against,' 'contrary,' 'in opposition'

dē- 'down,' 'off,' 'away'; denotes reversal, undoing, deprivation, or ridding of; also used intensively ('completely')

dis-, dī-, dif- 'asunder,' 'apart,' 'lacking'; also denotes reversal, undoing, deprivation, or negation

The forms *contro-* and *counter-* are due to the influence of Old French.

VOCABULARY

claudere, clausus (-clūdere, -clūsus)	-spicere (-iō), -spectus 'to look' (used only in compounds)
dūcere 'to lead'	pendēre , — 'to hang'
horrēre , — 'to shudder,' 'to shrink'	pendere, pēnsus 'to weigh'
jūrāre 'to swear'	venire, ventus ¹ 'to come'
	vertere, versus 'to turn'

Form fifteen English verbs and adjectives.

¹ The form *ventus* appears in compounds only.

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *abrogate*, *adequate*, *adhere*, *commute*, *controversy*, *counteract*, *depute*, *discern*.

2. Form present infinitives from the following Latin nouns and adjectives and, from these infinitives, form perfect participles; then combine the infinitives and participles with appropriate prefixes to form five English derivatives, determining the pronunciation and current meaning of each English word thus formed: *aptus* 'fit'; *firmus* 'fixed'; *fortis* 'brave', 'strong'; *locus* 'place.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *abhor*, *abjure*, *append*, *attach*, *bore*, *circumvent*, *convene*, *detest*, *disperse*, *divert*, *espouse*, *frustrate*, *renounce*.

4. Distinguish between: *cónjure* and *conjúre*; *abjure* and *ad-jure*.

5. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "to *abscond* with stolen goods"; "to *adduce* proof"; "to *advert* to a subject"; "impending disaster"; "to *absolve* from guilt"?

6. Translate the Latin expressions *ad nauseam* and *ad rem*. Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each, and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use each expression in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The necessity of obtaining Christmas trees as readily as possible makes our opposition to the Mayor's order forbidding their sale on the streets decidedly *ad rem*.

2. The editor repeated his insinuations against the character of the Mayor *ad nauseam*, until His Honor fell ill and *decamped* to Florida to recuperate.

3. With a twinkle in his eye, Charles Lamb informed his guests that he had *abjured* all the peccadilloes of his youth, including his failing for strong drink and the filthy weed.

4. The speaker *adjured* his listeners not to allow religious or racial prejudice to interfere with a just decision in the matter.

5. I *conjure* you, by all that is decent, not to make any hostile move against the man.

6. The wizard *conjured* up the spirits of the dead from a trench filled with blood.
7. Let us see whether the proposed city charter will *abrogate* any of the salutary provisions of the old charter.
8. The Governor *commuted* the sentence of the murderer from electrocution to life imprisonment because of certain discrepancies in the evidence.

B

1. We four were to be conjunct editors and to print our own works in the magazine we had founded.
2. He never openly aspersed the belief or practice of anybody.
3. I think that we have the whole Burns in our possession set forth in his consummate verses.
4. The condition of people living in the slums only proves that squalor may consist with civilization.
5. As soon as he was elected to office, he arrogated to himself the prerogatives that really belonged to others.
6. The corroding spirit of the jungle was beginning to permeate our souls.
7. The cottage was a sorry antediluvian makeshift of a building.
8. I do not, by criticizing myself, seek to disarm the wrath of other and less partial critics.

LESSON 26

Deponent Verbs. Prefixes (*Cont'd*)

Deponent Verbs. In each of the four conjugations, there are certain verbs called *deponent verbs*, which, in the main, have passive forms with active meanings.

CONJUGATION	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
I	mīr-or 'I wonder'	mīr-ārī 'to wonder'	mīrātus 'having wondered'
II	ver-eor 'I fear'	ver-ērī 'to fear'	veritus 'having feared'
III (a)	sequ-or 'I follow'	sequ-i 'to follow'	secūtus 'having followed'
	(b) grad-ior 'I step'	grad-i 'to step'	gressus 'having stepped'
IV	part-ior 'I share'	part-īrī 'to share'	partītus 'having shared'

Prefixes (Cont'd).

PREFIXES

ex-, ē-, ef- 'out,' 'out of,' 'from,' 'off,' 'forth,' 'without'; also used intensively ('thoroughly')

in-, il-, im-, ir- (> *en-, em-*) 'in,' 'on,' 'upon,' 'into'

in-, il-, im-, ir- 'not,' 'un-'

inter-, intel- (> *enter-*) 'between'

intrō- 'within'

ob-, oc-, of-, op- 'to,' 'toward,' 'against'; also used intensively ('very')

per- (> *par-*) 'through'; also used intensively ('very')

post- 'after'

The forms *en-, em-, enter-,* and *par-* are due to the influence of Old French.

VOCABULARY

facere (-iō), factus (-ficere, -fectus) 'to make,' 'to do'	mīrārī 'to wonder'
ferre (base fer-), lātus 'to bring' (irregular verb of the Third Conjugation)	pausāre ¹ 'to cease'
gradī (-ior), gressus (-gredi, -gressus) 'to step,' 'to go'	pōnere, positus ¹ 'to place,' 'to set'
	scribere, scriptus 'to write'
	sequi, secūtus 'to follow'
	servāre 'to keep'

Using all the prefixes hitherto studied, form fifteen English verbs and adjectives.

EXERCISES

1. Verbs for Special Study: *attest, calumniate, confiscate, enjoin, enjoy, execrate, extol, impinge.*

2. Word Formation: 'to work out,' 'to roll out,' 'to stretch out,' 'to seep through.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *applaud, bless, curse, disparage, eliminate, exclude, execrate, exhibit, expose, extol, hide, include.*

4. Justify the current meaning of *excruciate* in the light of its etymological meaning.

5. Translate the following Latin expressions: **deus ex māchinā; ante bellum; post bellum.** Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each, and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use each expression in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Parboil goes back to **perbullire** 'to boil thoroughly.' The meaning of *parboil* reveals the influence of folk etymology. The first element *par-* was popularly associated with 'part,' so that today *parboil* has lost its Latin sense of 'to boil thoroughly' and means 'to boil partially.'

¹ **Pausāre** and **pōnere, positus** were confused in Old French and, consequently, **pausāre** was borrowed by English in the form *pose* but assumed the meanings properly belonging to **pōnere**. Thus *interpose* 'to place between.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. We deemed it wise to dine at the O'Malleys, for, in spite of their lowly birth, they were wealthy and influential; but we were so nauseated by the vulgarities of this *parvenu* family that we escaped at the earliest possible moment.

2. Whenever I entered my father's study, I found him surrounded by books on bees and *ruminating* on the mysteries of these creatures that so fascinated him.

3. A sudden windfall from a distant aunt *obviated* the necessity I had been under of waiting, Micawberlike, for something to turn up.

4. The senseless gibberish of the representative from Maryland was calculated to *obfuscate* the minds of his colleagues about the real issues *involved* in the bill before the House.

5. The government had no intention of *impinging* on the rights of the landowners in the district without giving adequate compensation for the loss of their property.

6. He spared no opportunity to *calumniate* me by circulating malicious, unfounded reports about my character.

7. In the dramatic novel, passion is the plot and the solution, the protagonist and the *deus ex machina* in one.

B

1. The little child who looks out wonderingly from the picture in his grandfather's watch is now the veteran sheriff emeritus of his home town.

2. The terror of the unknown incarnates itself sometimes and leaps horribly out upon us.

3. To enlarge or illustrate the power and effects of love is to set a candle in the sun.

4. Culture improves and occasions elicit natural talents.

5. I have seen him escorting a marketwoman whom he had encountered in a shower, exalting his umbrella over her poor basket of fruit.

6. The books in the ancient library exude a dusty, leathery smell.

7. From my essay on Whitman, written in the heat of enthusiasm, the big words and emphatic passages have been ruthlessly excised.

8. Our preacher is no ranter, nor does he shut the door of mercy on entertainments; all he deprecates is their excess.

9. I do not care to obtrude my affairs on the notice of my readers.

10. The workmanship that has gone into the making of these poems leaves nothing to cavil at.

LESSON 27

Prefixes (*Concl'd*). Derivative Nouns

Prefixes (*Concl'd*).

PREFIXES

prae- 'before,' 'previous(ly),' 'surpassing(ly)'

prō- (> *pur-*) 'before,' 'in front of,' 'forth,' 'for'

re- 'back,' especially 'back to an original or former state or position'; 'backward,' 'again'; used chiefly to form words denoting repetition of the action of the verb or restoration to a previous state

retrō- 'backward,' 'back,' 'situated behind'

sē- 'aside'

sub-, suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sus- 'under,' 'below,' 'beneath,' 'lower'

super- (> *sur-*) 'above,' 'over'

trāns- 'across,' 'over,' 'beyond,' 'through'; 'on or to the other side of'; opposed to *cis-* 'on this side'; also used intensively ('thoroughly,' 'completely')

The forms *pur-* and *sur-* are due to the influence of Old French.

Derivative Nouns. Many English nouns are derived from the present infinitive and perfect participle of Latin verbs.

(a) *The Present Infinitive.* Numerous English verbs derived from Latin present infinitives are also used as nouns. The nouns, in such cases, are usually accented on the first syllable—e.g., *pérmit*, *trānsfer*—while the verbs are accented on the last syllable—e.g., *permít*, *transfér*.

(b) *The Perfect Participle.*

1. The neuter form of the perfect participle of certain verbs was used in Latin as a noun of the Second Declension. Several such nouns appear in English.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
sternere 'to spread'	strātus	strātum	<i>stratum</i>
facere 'to do,' 'to make'	factus	factum	<i>fact</i>

2. The masculine form of the perfect participle of certain verbs became an abstract noun of the Fourth Declension (cf. Lesson 11).

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
cēnsēre 'to value'	cēnsus	cēnsus	<i>census</i>
aspicere 'to look at'	aspectus	aspectus	<i>aspect</i>
stāre 'to stand'	status	status	<i>state</i>

There are many English nouns, equivalent in form to the bases of perfect participles, for which Latin has no nouns in **-us** or **-um**. The intermediate steps have been lost. All that we know about the noun *product*, for example, is that it is derived from **prōductus** 'having been brought forward,' perfect participle of **prōducere** 'to bring forward.' Whether *product* came from a noun **prōductum** or ***prōductus** cannot be determined.

VOCABULARY

caedere, caesus (-cidere, -cīsus) 'to cut'
capere (-iō), **captus** (-cipere, -ceptus) 'to take'
currere, cursus 'to run'
domināri 'to be lord'
fundere, fūsus 'to pour'

mittere, missus 'to send'
pellere, pulsus 'to drive'
spirāre 'to breathe'
sūmere, sūmptus 'to take'
vidēre, vīsus 'to see'

Using all the prefixes hitherto studied, form fifteen English nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *consensus, desideratum, pact, purport, purvey, surround, tract.*
2. Word Formation: 'to think back,' 'to see before,' 'to dip under,' 'to lead aside,' 'to walk backward,' 'to make ready previously.'
3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *lavish, mislead, pledge, profuse, progress, promise, retrogress, seduce.*
4. The altered base of what participle appears in the nouns *discourse, concourse, and recourse?* What is the present infinitive of the simple Latin verb?
5. What are the doublets of *estate* and *trait?*
6. Explain the absence of *p* in *deceit*. (See Supplementary Notes.)
7. There are two English verbs spelled *defer*, but the prefix of each verb is of different origin. Distinguish between the two etymologically and semantically.
8. State which words in the following list are linguistically related and what the nature of the relationship is: *commit, degrade, demote, deposit, discern, dissolve, graduate, infringe, postpone, refract, remiss, remove, resolute, secrete.*

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The influence of Old French is seen in the changes in form of many derivatives of Latin perfect participles. **Factum**, for example, has given us *fact* and, through Old French, *feat*. Old French, too, is responsible for the forms *defeat, counterfeit, and surfeit*, the second element in each of which is ultimately derived from **factum**.

Many derivatives of **-cipere** show French influences:

recipere 'to take back' > <i>receive</i>	receptus > <i>receipt</i>
dēcipere 'to cheat' > <i>deceive</i>	dēceptus > <i>deceit</i>
concupere 'to comprehend' > <i>conceive</i>	conceptus > <i>conceit</i>

From **conductus** 'having been brought together' we have derived *conduct* and, through Old French, *conduit*; from **strictus** 'having been stretched,' *strict* and *strait*; from **tractus** 'having been drawn,'

tract and *trait*; while *prōtractus* 'having been drawn forth' has yielded *protract* and *portrait*. More striking is *quiētus* 'quiet,' the perfect participle of *quiēscere* 'to be quiet.' This form is the ancestor of the noun *quietus* and of four English adjectives: *quiet*, *quit* (i.e., *quit of*), *quite*, and, with its form completely changed in passing through Old French, *coy*.

Closely related to *receive* and *receipt* is the noun *recipe*. This is a direct borrowing of the second singular imperative of *recipere*, and means 'take' in Latin. Originally the first word of a prescription ordering the apothecary to take and mix certain ingredients, *recipe* came to be used of the prescription itself. The word in its original meaning has survived in the symbol \mathcal{R} .

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. An indictment charges a person with an offense, but the law *presumes* his innocence until guilt is proved.
2. I have digressed for the moment, but I shall *recur* presently to the subject under discussion.
3. In summing up the evidence, the judge insisted that the *consensus* of the testimony showed that death had been accidental.
4. Among the *desiderata* which the new principal listed for submission to the Board of Education for immediate purchase were a swimming pool and sundry cosmetics for the course in department.
5. I am too prone to *procrastinate*, hoping that the morrow may bring a solution of my problems.
6. There is nothing vague or equivocal in what I have been saying; my words have been *precise* and my meaning, I hope, is clear enough.

B

1. Unless there is an improvement in your conduct, I will have recourse to sterner measures.
2. This is merely my conjecture, for I have neither *data* nor *postulata* enough to reason upon.

3. In accepting the editorship of the magazine, I was to be the *advocatus*, not, I hope, *diaboli*, but *juventutis*.

4. Winged by her own impetus and the dying breeze, our ship skimmed under the cliffs.

5. The warm air, broken by our steamer, coiled over us in a lazy flux.

LESSON 28

Frequentative Verbs. Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds

Frequentative Verbs. The Romans formed certain verbs by attaching the ending *-āre*—i.e., the present infinitive ending of First-Conjugation verbs—to the bases of perfect participles. Verbs so formed serve to express repeated or intensive action and are, therefore, called *frequentative verbs*. Even in Latin, however, these verbs often lose their frequentative or intensive force, and naturally in English this force rarely appears.

	LATIN VERB	FREQUENTATIVE VERB	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
PRESENT			
INFINITIVE:	premere 'to press'	pressāre 'to keep on pressing'	<i>press</i> (verb)
PERFECT PARTICIPLE:	pressus	pressātus	—
PRESENT			
INFINITIVE:	dicere 'to say'	dictāre 'to keep on saying'	—
PERFECT PARTICIPLE:	dictus	dictātus	<i>dictate</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds. In Lesson 21, we treated of one type of multiple-base compounds—the descriptive compound. We shall now study a second type of such compounds in which the second member is regularly a verb or verbal base and the first member is the base of a noun or an adjective. The first base usually

depends upon or serves as the object of the verbal idea contained in the second base. Hence, to this type we have given the name *dependent compound*. As in descriptive compounds, prefixes or suffixes or both may be attached to dependent compounds. Thus *carboniferous* 'coal-producing' is composed of *carbon-*, base of **carbō**, **carbōnis** 'coal'; *-i-*, connecting vowel; *-fer-*, base of the present infinitive **ferre** 'to bear,' 'to produce'; and *-ous* < **-ōsus**, Latin adjective-forming suffix. Similarly, *tripartite* 'divided into three parts,' 'made between' or 'involving three parties' is composed of *tri-*, Latin combining form meaning 'three'; and *-partite*, derived from **partitus**, perfect participle of **partīri** 'to divide.'

Several combinations constantly recur as the second members of dependent compounds, as follows:

1. *-ferous* 'bearing,' 'producing' composed of *-fer-*, base of the present infinitive **ferre** 'to bear,' 'to produce'; and *-ous* < **-ōsus**, Latin adjective-forming suffix.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
vōx 'voice'	vōc-	*vōciferōsus	<i>vociferous</i>

-fer, in the sense of 'that which bears or produces,' may be used to form nouns—e.g., *conifer* '(a tree) that bears cones (**cōnus**).'

2. *-vorous* 'eating' composed of *-vor-*, base of the present infinitive **vorāre** 'to devour'; and *-ous* < **-ōsus**, Latin adjective-forming suffix.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
carbō 'flesh'	carn-	*carnivorōsus	<i>carnivorous</i>

-vora may be attached to the bases of Latin nouns for food

to indicate classes of animals according to the food they eat—e.g., *carnivora* 'flesh-eating animals.' The singular of *-vora* is *-vore*—e.g., in *carnivore*.

3. *-colous* 'inhabiting' composed of *-col-*, base of the present infinitive *colere* 'to inhabit'; and *-ous* < *-ōsus*, Latin adjective-forming suffix.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
<i>stāgnum</i> 'pool'	<i>stāgn-</i>	* <i>stāgnicolōsus</i>	<i>stagnicolous</i>

4. *-igate* < *-igātus*, perfect participle of *-igāre*, an altered form of *agere* 'to do,' 'to drive,' 'to direct,' used in multiple-base compounds.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
<i>nāvis</i> 'boat'	<i>nāv-</i>	<i>nāvigāre, nāvigātus</i>	<i>navigate</i>

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *aqueduct, castigate, fluctuate, hesitate, insectivorous, mitigate, pulsate.*

2. Word Formation: 'wood-producing,' 'grass-eating,' 'light bearer,' '(animals) that eat everything,' 'gold-producing,' 'tree-inhabiting,' 'berry-eating,' 'land-inhabiting.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *aggravate, aqueduct, assuage, castigate, chasten, clamorous, conduit, faller, fluctuate, hesitate, mitigate, oscillate, pulsate, vibrate, vociferous.*

4. What is the linguistic relationship between: *chasten* and *castigate*; *challenge* and *calumniate*?

5. What irregularity is there in the formation of the verbs *agitate* and *visit*?

6. Translate the following Latin expressions: *dē jūre, dē factō, ex post factō, ipsō factō, obiter dictum.* Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each, and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use each expression in a

sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application. Use *de jure* and *de facto* together in a sentence.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The endings *-ade* and *-ad*, which appear in a number of English words, are ultimately derived from *-āta*, feminine singular of the perfect-participial ending of First-Conjugation verbs. Thus *arcade* goes back to *arcāta* 'made into (the shape of) an arch,' from *arcāre*, a denominative verb of *arcus* 'arch.' From *sāl, salis* 'salt,' we may assume a denominative verb **salāre*, and from this, in turn, **salāta*, which has given us *salad*. *Ballad* comes from **ballāta* (*ballāre* 'to dance'); *tirade*, 'a long-drawn-out speech,' from **tīrāta* (*tīrāre* 'to draw').

Under certain circumstances, the ending of the perfect participle of First-Conjugation verbs, after passing through Old French, was altered to *-y*. Thus *army* comes ultimately from *armāta*, feminine form of the perfect participle of the denominative verb *armāre* (*arma* 'arms'). *Armada*, too, comes from the same participle; but since it passed through Spanish, it has remained closer in form to its Latin ancestor. *Dictus*, perfect participle of *dicere* 'to say,' has given us, through Italian, *ditto*; while *dictātum*, perfect participle neuter of the frequentative verb *dictāre*, has yielded, through Old French, *ditty*. From *tractāre* 'to draw violently,' 'to handle,' the frequentative verb of *trahere*, *tractus* 'draw,' we have derived, through Old French, the verb *treat*. Similarly, from *tractātus*, its perfect participle, we have derived *treaty*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The commercial representatives of England, France, and the United States concluded a *tripartite* agreement on the adjustment of tariffs.

2. At the height of the fracas, a latter-day Stentor arose and made a *vociferous* appeal to the mob for self-restraint.

3. The stockholders of the corporation eliminated all administrative officers from effective control, but allowed them to remain

as dummies, thus setting up a *de facto* organization under their own management.

4. The immigrant authorities passed an *ex post facto* ruling that all foreigners who had entered the country illegally after a certain date should be deported.

B

1. Is it not a reproach that man is a carnivorous animal?

2. The study of the classics chastens the minds of men.

3. The thought that "all men must die" did not assuage my grief.

4. The hot blood of youth pulsated like a burning torrent through his veins.

5. Charles Greville had a passionate and omnivorous curiosity about men and women.

6. Though I am a carnivore, I had not the pluck to be a vulture.

7. She looked about for the flowers and found them on the window sill, between two pestiferous sinks.

8. My father began to dig into the depths, into the primary and auriferous rock of the *Scriptures*.

LESSON 29

Review

A. Define and illustrate: deponent verb, denominative verb, frequentative verb.

B. With and without the use of prefixes, form at least thirty English derivatives from the following Latin verbs: *scrībere*, *scrīptus* 'to write'; *vocāre* 'to call' (*vōx*, *vōcis* 'voice'); *ferre*, *lātus* 'to bear,' 'to produce'; *mittere*, *missus* 'to send.'

C. Read the passage given below. Make studies of the words containing present-infinitive and perfect-participial bases (there are at least sixteen), following the scheme indicated below. Rewrite the passage, substituting wherever possible synonyms or synonymous expressions, preferably of non-Latin origin, for the words in question.

ENGLISH WORD	PREFIX (if any)	BASE	CURRENT MEANING
<i>conduct</i>	con-	-duct, from <i>ductus</i> , perfect participle of <i>dūcere</i> 'to lead'	'behavior'

The King and his privy councilors convened to consider a charge that the judge had commuted the sentence of a notorious political offender from life imprisonment to five years. The discussions proceeded *ad nauseam*, until one of the participants, who abhorred the prisoner, rose and fulminated against the unfortunate fellow with such hot indignation that the sedate little King, who had been vacil-

lating between two opinions, finally declared: "While I solemnly abjure any intention of interfering with the rights and privileges of judges under normal circumstances, I cannot condone, but rather must execrate, his conduct in this case. I therefore abrogate, without further parley, whatever action the judge has taken."

D. Choose from the parentheses the word that correctly fits the context. Check your choice from the dictionary. Use the rejected word in a sentence.

1. No attempt was made to (affect, effect) the release of the prisoner.

2. The presence of the enemy at the city gates prevented the (ingress, egress) of the inhabitants.

3. The physician advised his patient to (conserve, preserve) his strength for the operation.

4. The King took an oath in which he (adjured, abjured) all claims to the throne of the neighboring state.

5. We (assumed, postulated), for the sake of discussion, that all cats are as intelligent as dogs.

6. It so (happened, transpired) that I was at the time flush of money.

7. Because the patient was suffering from angina pectoris, the physicians suggested a regimen which (proscribed, prescribed) smoking.

E. From the following list of words, select a synonym or synonymous expression for each word or expression given below in parentheses: *adequate, arrest, attested, combat, contempt, deliberate, disarm, erratum, exquisite, impel, ingratiating, intimate, inveigh, merit, obstinate, occult, precise, presses, reserve, resolve, salve, unabated.*

1. to (stop) a movement

3. to (render harmless) a

2. the affair (demands

suspicion

haste)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 4. well(-authenticated)
fact | 12. in a (hidden) sense |
| 5. (stubborn) wrong-
headedness | 13. to (declaim bitterly)
against |
| 6. to (quiet) one's con-
science | 14. (personal) sense of |
| 7. to (unravel) a contra-
diction | 15. (studied) artist |
| 8. to have small (worth) | 16. a (winning) smile |
| 9. with (undiminished)
zest | 17. unfortunate (mistake) |
| 10. an (intense) pleasure | 18. (restraint) of manner |
| 11. to (fight against) an
opinion | 19. frigid (scorn) |
| | 20. (exact) meaning |
| | 21. (sufficient) philosophy
of life |
| | 22. to (constrain) belief |

F. State which words in the following sentences belong to the classes of words treated in this chapter and determine also the etymology, pronunciation, and meaning of each in its context:

1. The headlines spoke of portentous matters not actually with us but looming ahead.
2. The poorest hovel which he honors by sleeping in it becomes *ipso facto* for that time a palace.

LESSON 30

The Present Participle

Formation of the Present Participle. In addition to the present infinitive and the perfect participle, there is a third form of the Latin verb, the present active participle, which has yielded a large number of words in English. The present participle is formed by attaching certain endings (see column 4 below) to the base of the present infinitive. The present participle functions in Latin as an adjective and is declined as an adjective of the Third Declension (cf. Lesson 10). The base of the present participle, like that of adjectives of the Third Declension, is found by dropping the genitive ending *-is*.

CONJUGATION	PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE		
			<i>Nominative</i>	<i>Genitive</i>	<i>Base</i>
I	amāre 'to love'	am-	am-āns 'loving'	am-antis	amant-
II	monēre 'to warn'	mon-	mon-ēns 'warning'	mon-entis	monent-
III (a)	agere 'to do,' 'to drive,' 'to direct'	ag-	ag-ēns 'doing'	ag-entis	agent-
(b)	capere (-iō) 'to take'	cap-	cap-iēns 'taking'	cap-ientis	capient-
IV	audire 'to hear'	aud-	aud-iēns 'hearing'	aud-ientis	audient-

Note the difference in the formation of the present participle of the two types of Third-Conjugation verbs.

The Present Participle in English. The bases of Latin present participles, simple and compound, appear in English most frequently as adjectives, occasionally as nouns.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
urgēre 'to press'	urgēns, urgentis 'press- ing'	urgent
agere 'to do,' 'to drive'	agēns, agentis 'doing'	agent

In Old French, all present-participial endings were leveled to *-ant*. Those Latin present participles, therefore, which were borrowed through Old French often show this ending in English instead of their regular endings.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
mordēre 'to bite'	mordēns, mordentis 'bit- ing'	mordant

EXERCISES

1. Form and translate the present participles of the verbs listed in the Vocabularies of Lessons 23 and 26.

2. Words for Special Study: *deterrent, diffident, effulgent, exigent, incipient, latent, nascent, sentient, stagnant, tenant.*

3. Word Formation: 'going before,' 'leaping,' 'leaping back,' 'suffering,' 'hanging from,' 'serving under,' 'running back.'

4. Synonyms and Antonyms: *ascendant, caustic, concomitant, concurrent, confident, conjoined, contrary, diffident, dormant, latent, manifest, mordant, obscure, patent, predominant.*

5. Distinguish in meaning between the following doublets, explaining the reason for their difference in form: *pendent, pendant; confident, confidant.* Distinguish etymologically and semantically between: *patent* and *patient; clamant* and *claimant; concurrent* and *recurrent; précédent* and *précédent.*

6. Justify the current meanings of *Occident* and *Orient* in the light of their etymological meanings.

7. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "dominant motive"; "salient characteristic"; "lambent flame"; "imminent danger"?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Many interesting etymologies appear among the derivatives of Latin present participles. Thus *convenient* and *covenant* are really the same word, since both are derived from **conveniēns, conveniēntis** (**convenire** 'to come together'). *Sapient* and *savant* both come from **sapiēns, sapientis** (**sapere** 'to be wise'), while *sergeant* and *servant* are derived from **serviēns, servientis** (**servire** 'to serve'). The last two nouns, as their form shows, were both borrowed through Old French.

Infant and *infantry*, despite widely different meanings, are closely related etymologically. In Latin, **infāns, infantis** literally means 'not speaking,' since it consists of the prefix **in-** 'not' and **fāns**, present participle of **fārī** 'to speak.' The chief distinction of a Roman baby, it would appear, was its inability to speak. **Infāns** became *infante* 'boy' or 'foot soldier' in Italian, since, in medieval times, boys were often employed as attendants upon knights and marched at their side. Thus, from the related Italian noun *infanteria*, we have derived the noun *infantry* 'foot soldiers.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The disease, *latent* for many years, suddenly became virulent.

2. I kept no secrets from my *confidant* and friend.

3. We succeeded in growing bits of human cancer by means of specially prepared artificial media that served as *nutrient* on which the cancer cells grew.

4. Early and *provident* fear is the mother of safety.

B

1. His mind was a mirror of the sentient universe.
2. The smoke from the fire was clean, sweet, and pungent.
3. I make no distinction between mental and physical help; the one has ever been adjuvant to the other.
4. Poverty is so great an evil and pregnant with so much misery that I cannot but earnestly enjoin you to avoid it.
5. The gray roof of the sky soon broke with the incumbent weight of light, letting in sunshine through the narrow fracture to the sea.
6. We were not prepared to meet the exigent demands that were made upon us by our new social environment.
7. The sour looks and the restlessness of the members of the committee showed that there was a nascent revolt against the chairman.
8. The X ray disclosed unmistakable signs of incipient tuberculosis.
9. Two sparkling diamonds, set in pendants, graced her ears.
10. Poets are often diffident in the face of the realities of life.
11. A presentation copy, reader—if haply you are innocent of such favors—is a copy of a book which does not sell.

LESSON 31

The Present Participle in English (*Concl'd*)

Abstract nouns may be formed in Latin by attaching the suffix **-ia** to the present-participial base, which ends in **-t**. In English, the **t** of this base, combined with the ending **-ia** (i.e., **-tia**), becomes **-ce** or **-cy**. Such nouns retain their abstract meaning in English.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTI- CIPLE	BASE	ABSTRACT NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
radiāre 'to emit rays'	radiāns	radiant-	*radiantia 'the state or quali- ty of emitting rays'	<i>radiance</i>
fluere 'to flow'	fluēns	fluent-	fluentia 'the act of flowing'	<i>fluency</i>

VOCABULARY

agere, actus 'to do,' 'to drive,' 'to direct'	oriri, ortus 'to arise'
crēdere, crēditus 'to believe,' 'to trust'	pati (-ior), passus 'to suffer'
crēscere, crētus 'to grow'	sentire, sēnsus 'to feel'
fluere, fluctus or fluxus 'to flow'	tangere, tactus (-tingere, -tactus) 'to touch'
nāscī, nātus 'to be born'	

With and without the use of prefixes, and with the suffixes **-ce** and **-cy**, form fifteen English derivatives from the present-infinitive, perfect-participial, and present-participial bases.

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *coincidence, ebullience, incipience, indigence, intransigence, peccancy, petulance, prurience, reluctance*. Wherever possible, form an adjective to accompany each noun.

2. Form the present infinitive and perfect participle of the denominative verbs built on the following Latin nouns and adjectives, giving as many English words as possible from the present participle of each verb and determining the pronunciation and current meaning of each word thus formed: *celeber, celebris* 'frequented,' 'famous'; *cor, cordis* 'heart'; *miles, militis* 'soldier'; *odor, odōris* 'smell'; *scintilla* 'spark'; *sonus* 'sound'; *ūber, ūberis* 'fruitful'; *varius* 'diverse,' 'different.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *accordance, averse, coincidence, concurrence, consonance, discordance, indigence, lenient, opulence, poverty, reluctant, strict*.

4. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *affluence* and *influence*.

5. State which words in the following list are linguistically related and what the nature of the relationship is: *immerse, tangent, concept, move, antecedent, strict, difference, ingress, tact, stringency, incipient, emergency, demote, recess, gradient*.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

In English words borrowed from Latin through Italian, the ending *-tia* was altered to *-za*. Thus, *cadenza* comes from *cadentia* (*cadere* 'to fall'). *Cadence, chance, and cadenza* are triplets. *Extravaganza* comes from **extrāvagantia* [*extrāvagārī* 'to wander outside (any limit)'] and is the doublet of *extravagance*. Similarly, *influenza* and its doublet *influence* come from *influentia* (*influere* 'to flow in').

Old French is responsible for numerous doublets among the nominal derivatives of the Latin present participle. From *oboediētia* (*oboedīre* 'to obey,' composed of *ob-* and *audīre* 'to hear'), we have derived *obedience* and *obeisance*, the mark of obedience. *Penitence* and *penance* are both derived from *paenitentia* (*paenitēre* 'to repent'). From *fidentia*, the abstract noun of the simple verb

fidere 'to trust,' English has taken *fiancé* and *fiancée*, while the compound *diffidentia* (*diffidere* 'to distrust') has yielded *diffidence* (to which *defiance* is closely related).

Seance, a borrowing through French, shows specialization of meaning; its ancestor is **sedentia*, the abstract noun of *sedēre* 'to sit.' *Nuisance* has been considerably softened in meaning in English; it is a borrowing through Old French from *nocentia*, the abstract noun from *nocēre* 'to harm.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. It is difficult to understand his *intransigence* in the light of all efforts to compromise with him.
2. The resemblance of one of the characters in the novel to a well-known actor was *coincidental*, for the author had no knowledge of the man's character or personal appearance.
3. Everyone knew that his irritation was but the *petulance* of a moment.
4. The luxury of one class is counterbalanced by the *indigence* of the other.

B

1. Goethe, in his *Faust*, presents experience in its immediacy.
2. Personal ascendancy may exist with or without adequate talent for its expression.
3. The prospect of a long, tedious journey dampened his ebullient spirits.
4. He possesses the freshness, the naïveté, the attractive diffidence of youth.
5. The skipper eyed the dog narrowly, as though the creature had prescience but could tell us what it knew only by drooping and quivering its hind quarters.
6. The requirements for admission to medical colleges are becoming more stringent every year.
7. In these latter days, we have learned that the Puritans were not untinged with prurience.
8. The day following was Sunday, a gray day of penance, the

men soberly washing their shirts in buckets and smoking moody pipes.

9. I spent as much money on knickknacks as would have kept a poor man's family in affluence for months.

10. The cloudy sky was not gray now, but pearly, for it was translucent to the sun.

LESSON 32

Inceptive Verbs. Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (*Cont'd*)

Inceptive Verbs. Inceptive verbs—i.e., verbs that denote the beginning of an action or a state—may be formed in Latin by attaching the ending *-ēscere* to the present-infinitive base. The present participles of such verbs have given rise to many English derivatives, a few of which have retained their original inceptive force.

NORMAL VERB	INCEPTIVE VERB		ENGLISH LOAN WORD
	<i>Present Infinitive</i>	<i>Present Participle</i>	
effervere 'to boil up'	effervēscere 'to begin to boil up'	effervēscēns	<i>effervescent</i>
		<i>Abstract Noun</i>	
		*effervēscientia	<i>effervescence</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (Contd.). Present participles frequently serve as the second member of dependent compounds. Thus *grandiloquent*, 'speaking grand things,' is composed of *grand-*, base of the Latin adjective *grandis* 'grand'; *-i-*, connecting vowel; and *-loquent*, base of the present participle *loquēns*, *loquentis* 'speaking,' from *loqui* 'to speak.'

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *adolescent, coalesce, concupiscence, evanescent, incandescent, malevolence, mellifluent, obsolescent, participant, plenipotentiary, recrudescence, somniloquent*. Of the derivatives from inceptive verbs, which, if any, have retained the inceptive force?

2. Word Formation: 'making warm,' 'making (a solid) into a liquid,' 'night-walking,' 'rope-walking,' '(being) of equal value,' 'standing equally apart.'

3. Form a multiple-base compound containing the present-infinitive base and another containing the present-participial base of the verb *loquī* 'to speak.'

4. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *omnipotence* and *omniscience*.

5. Give antonyms of *malevolence* and *omniscience* and synonyms of *grandiloquent, coalesce, and evanescent*.

6. Distinguish between inceptive verb and frequentative verb. Give an example of each.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Quintessence, 'the most essential part of anything,' 'the purest manifestation of anything,' has a long etymological history. Empedocles, a Greek philosopher of the fifth century B. C., believed that the universe consisted of four material elements: earth, air, fire, and water. A century later, Aristotle assumed a fifth immaterial element, which he believed was finer than and essential to the existence of the other four. This fifth element he called *πέμπτῃ οὐσίᾳ*, literally, 'fifth being.' *Ousia* is an abstract noun from the present participle of the Greek verb *εἶναι* 'to be.' The medieval philosophers found difficulty in translating this expression into Latin because Classical Latin had no present participle of the verb *esse* 'to be.' Consequently, they were forced to coin a participle *essēns, essentis* 'being,' from which they formed the abstract noun *essentia* 'essence,' thus providing an almost exact equivalent of the Greek *ousia*. The whole expression was translated *quinta essentia* 'fifth essence.' It is from this Latin expression that *quintessence* is directly descended.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The old lady was one of those *effervescent* creatures who are always hissing and boiling over like an old-fashioned teakettle.
2. It may be said, with greater truth, that the two organizations *coalesced* rather than merged; for, in the union of the two groups, the identity of each was lost.
3. His emotions were as *evanescent* as dark clouds at the coming out of the sun after a storm.
4. Many words coined in English become *obsolescent* if they do not fill a real need, and finally die out.
5. The speaker's words were so *mellifluous* that one could almost detect the sweetness dropping from his lips.

B

1. Beef comprehends in it the quintessence of partridge and quail and venison and pheasant and plum pudding.
2. Zeus, in the *Iliad*, is hot-tempered, amorous, and luxurious—by no means omnipotent or omniscient.
3. The impressions of infancy had burned into him and he resented the impertinence of manhood.
4. The diplomat presented his credentials giving him pleni-potentiary instructions to deal with the matters under discussion between the two nations.

LESSON 33

The Gerundive

Formation of the Gerundive. The last form of the Latin verb that is important for its English derivatives is the gerundive. Like the perfect participle, the gerundive is an adjective in form and function and is passive in meaning; but unlike the perfect participle, it expresses 'necessity,' 'fitness,' or 'obligation.' It is declined like an adjective of the First and Second Declension (cf. Lesson 6). The ending **-us** is used for agreement with masculine nouns, **-a** for agreement with feminine nouns, and **-um** for agreement with neuter nouns. The gerundive is formed by attaching the endings **-andus**, **-endus**, **-endus** (**-iendus** in the case of the **-iō** verbs), and **-iendus** to the bases of verbs of the First, Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations, respectively.

CONJUGATION	PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	GERUNDIVE
I	amāre 'to love'	am-	am-andus 'must be loved'
II	monēre 'to warn'	mon-	mon-endus 'must be warned'
III (a)	agere 'to do'	ag-	ag-endus 'must be done'
(b)	capere (-iō) 'to take'	cap-	cap-iendus 'must be taken'
IV	audire 'to hear'	aud-	aud-iendus 'must be heard'

The Gerundive in English. The gerundive appears in English either alone or combined with the suffix **-ous** (<**-ōsus**). Its meaning of 'necessity,' 'obligation,' or 'fitness' is often retained in English.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	GERUNDIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
memorāre 'to bring to remembrance'	memor-	memorandus	memorandum 'that which must be brought to remembrance'

EXERCISES

1. Form and translate the gerundive of verbs listed in the Vocabularies of Lessons 26 and 27.

2. Words for Special Study: *agenda*, *crescendo*, *diminuendo*, *dividend*, *gerundive*, *horrendous*, *innuendo*, *multiplicand*, *reprimand*, *reverend*, *stupendous*, *subtrahend*, *tremendous*.

3. Word Formation: 'that which must be corrected,' 'that which must be added,' 'that which must be brought back,' 'that which must be lessened.' Form the plurals of these nouns. Which, if any, have retained the gerundive force?

4. What feminine given names mean 'she who must be admired' and 'she who must be loved'? What would be the form of each of these names if they were masculine?

5. Justify the current meanings of *viands* and *deodand* in the light of their etymological meanings.

6. What type of change of meaning has taken place in the noun *propaganda*? (See Supplementary Notes.) What is the difference in meaning between *innuendo* and *insinuation*?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

In 1622, Pope Gregory XV organized a committee of cardinals to unify and supervise the work of foreign missions. This group was entitled *Congregatio de Propaganda Fide* 'Congregation for Propagation of the Faith.' *Propaganda* (the gerundive of *prōpā-gāre* 'to multiply,' 'to spread') was brought into English through its use in this title.

Lavāre 'to wash' is the source of a number of interesting derivatives. The present infinitive has yielded, through Italian, the noun *lava*, and is partly responsible for the verb *lave*. The first

person singular future, *lavābō* 'I shall wash'—the first word in *Psalms XXVI, 6*—has been borrowed without change as a noun, meaning either the 'liturgical act' which this psalm accompanied, or the 'towel' or 'basin' used in this act. *Laundry* is derived ultimately from the gerundive *lavandus* 'must be washed.'

CHAPTER V

Compound Nouns and Adjectives Formed From Verbs

Chapter III was devoted to compound nouns and adjectives formed by combining various suffixes with the bases of nouns and adjectives. The present chapter is concerned with those suffixes which may be attached to present-infinitive and perfect-participial bases of Latin verbs to form compound nouns and adjectives. (For general remarks on the use and meaning of suffixes, see the introduction to Chapter III.)

LESSON 34

Compound Nouns: Present-Infinitive or Perfect- Participial Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix. Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (*Cont'd*)

(a) *Present-Infinitive or Perfect-Participial Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix.* The suffix *-iō* (genitive *-iōnis*) may be attached either to the present-infinitive base or to the perfect-participial base. This suffix, appearing in English in the form *-ion*, forms abstract nouns in which it has the meaning 'state of,' 'process of,' 'act of,' or 'result of the act of.'

148 COMPOUND NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, FROM VERBS

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	BASE	LATIN COM- POUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
opinārī 'to sup- pose,' 'to think'	(opinātus)	opin-	opiniō, opini- ōnis	<i>opinion</i>
agere 'to do'	actus	act-	actiō, actiōnis	<i>action</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (Cont'd). When the Latin verb **facere** 'to make,' 'to do' is used as the second element of dependent compounds, it is usually changed to **-ficāre**, a form which is responsible for the second element in many English multiple-base compounds.

1. **-ficāre** appears in English in the form *-fy* 'to make,' 'to form into.'

LATIN ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
clārus 'clear'	clār-	clārificāre	<i>clarify</i>

The base **-ficat-** of **-ficātus**, perfect participle of **-ficāre**, appears in English combined with the suffix **-iō, -iōnis**.

LATIN ADJECTIVE	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
clārus 'clear'	clār-	clārificātiō	<i>clarification</i>

There are a few Latin dependent compounds in which **facere**, as well as **-ficāre**, is used as the second element. **Facere**, too, appears in English as *-fy*. One can, however, always determine whether a dependent compound has been formed from **facere** or **-ficāre** by examining the English derivatives of the perfect participle to see whether they have been formed from **factus**, perfect participle of **facere**, or from **-ficātus**, perfect participle of **-ficāre**. For example, *stupefy* comes from **stupefacere**, as shown by the fact that the derivative of the perfect participle is *stupefaction*.

2. **-fic-**, base of the present infinitive **-ficāre**, was extended in Latin to **-ficus** 'making,' 'causing,' and was used to form adjectives. **-ficus** appears in English in the form *-fic*.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
pāx 'peace'	pāc-	pācificus	<i>pacific</i>

3. **-fic-** was also extended in Latin to **-ficium** 'result of making,' and was used to form nouns. **-ficium** appears in English as *-fice*.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
aedēs 'building'	aed-	aedificium	<i>edifice</i>

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *artifice, beatific, condition, contrition, diversify, exemplify, incursion, maceration, mollify, orifice, saturation, stultify, suspicion.*

2. Word Formation: 'state of being stretched,' 'result of the act of moving together,' 'act of moving ahead,' 'result of breaking,' 'disease-causing,' 'sleep-causing,' 'to make great,' 'to make certain,' 'to make false,' 'result of the act of making strong.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *artifice, beatific, calculation, clarification, composition, computation, contrition, distrust, formation, happy, miserable, obfuscation, penitence, rebellion, resignation, suspicion, trickery.*

4. What irregularity is there in the formation of *terrific* and *horrific*?

5. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between: *collusion* and *collision*; *allusion* and *illusion*.

6. State which words in the following list are linguistically related and what the nature of the relationship is: *efficient, convene, stupendous, reason, condition, poison, stupefy, ration, indict, potion, invention, referendum, collation, incipient, caption, involve, agenda, revolution, reaction.*

7. Translate the Latin expression *reductiō ad absurdum*. Determine its pronunciation and current meaning, and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use this expression in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. In order to maintain good health, dieticians prescribe a *diversified* diet: meat, butter, eggs, vegetables, including, of course, the inevitable spinach.

2. The appearance of a ship floating in the clouds above the horizon is an optical *illusion* caused by the refraction of light.

3. For many minutes we were in the dark as to the meaning of the speaker's cryptic remark, but before long we realized that it was an *allusion* to the acquisitive tendencies of the man whom he was attacking.

4. A clothespole, a shaving mug, a bit of cord, and an attic window enabled me to indulge in a pleasant *artifice* to obtain the ripest apples from the topmost boughs of the tree.

- 5. It was the *reductio ad absurdum* of slavery when the Governor of Virginia was forced to hang John Brown, whom he declared to be a man of integrity and courage.

B

1. The monotonous routine of life is a soporific.

2. One could hear the faint sibilation of insects as we proceeded.

3. The scarified earth was already sparsely mantled with shrubs.

4. What the writer of short stories cannot vivify he should omit.

5. The slopes of a volcano should be a place for nobody but hermits dwelling in prayer and meditation.

6. If you remarked how well a plant was looking, the old gardener would thank you with solemn unction.

7. He has been accused of trying to be witty when, in truth, he was but struggling to give his poor thoughts articulation.

8. That a woman should bear rule, superiority, dominion, or empire over any realm is a subversion of good order.

9. The woman hobbled down the church steps with a beatific expression on her face that would have gladdened the soul of a medieval painter.

10. An act of contrition and her consequent absolution had transformed the old sinner into something not unlike a saint.

11. The incursion of the Japanese into Chinese territory nullified all efforts on the part of the Japanese to mollify Occidental nations.

12. I had been guilty on many occasions of talking too much, and thus had stultified myself in the eyes of my friends.

13. These poor mistaken people think that they shine, and so indeed they do; but it is as putrefaction shines in the dark.

LESSON 35

Compound Nouns: Present-Infinitive Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix

(b) *Present-Infinitive Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix.*
 Certain suffixes may be attached to the bases of present infinitives to form compound nouns.

1. Present-infinitive base plus the Latin suffix **-mentum** > English *-ment*, denoting 'means,' 'instrument,' 'act of,' 'result of the act of,' 'state of,' or 'quality of.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
docēre 'to teach'	doc-	documentum	document

English verbs may be formed from the derivative English nouns. Thus *document* is both noun and verb.

2. Present-infinitive base plus the Latin suffix **-men** (genitive **-minis**) > English *-men*, denoting 'act of,' 'result of the act of,' or 'means.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
regere 'to rule'	reg-	regimen	regimen

3. Present-infinitive base plus the Latin suffix **-bulum**, **-bula**, or **-culum** > English *-ble*, *-cle*, denoting 'place,' 'result of the act of,' 'means,' or 'instrument.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
stāre 'to stand'	stā-	stabulum	<i>stable</i>
vehere 'to carry'	veh-	vehiculum	<i>vehicle</i>

4. Present-infinitive base plus the Latin suffix **-or** > English **-or**, forming abstract nouns in which it denotes 'state of' or 'result of the act of.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
languēre 'to be faint'	langu-	languor	<i>languor</i>

The suffix **-or** is used principally with verbs of the Second Conjugation.

VOCABULARY

acuere, acūtus 'to sharpen'	tremere , — 'to tremble'
ārdere, ārsus 'to burn'	valēre , — 'to be strong,' 'to be worth'
regere, rēctus (-rigere, -rēctus) 'to rule'	volvere (base volv- or volu-), volūtus 'to roll'

Form ten English nouns. The nouns may bear prefixes.

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *clangor, curriculum, fetor, ligament, lineament, monument, obstacle, specimen, spectacle, stamina, tentacle, torpor.*

2. Word Formation: 'brightness,' 'stiffness,' 'paleness,' 'instrument for receiving.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *ardor, censure, commendation, compliment, contour, example, fervor, fetor, lethargy, lineament, specimen, stamina, stench, torpor, vigor.*

4. What is the linguistic relationship between *regimen* and *regime*? Distinguish in meaning between these words and also between: *complement* and *compliment*; *complement* and *supplement*.

5. Analyze the elements of *merriment*. What name is given to such words?

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Every statement of the witness was supported by reliable *documentary* evidence, in the form of deeds, receipts, and bills of sale.

2. The physician suggested a *regimen* which, among other things, included fresh air and sunshine.

3. Politicians lamented the fact that, under the old *regime*, they had been able to twine their *tentacles* about many lucrative offices.

4. Stevenson considered it a *compliment* to his abilities that, as a youth, he was chosen joint editor of the magazine.

5. The student *complemented* his studies in music with frequent excursions to the opera house.

6. It was deemed necessary to issue a *supplement* to clear up certain matters that had been cursorily treated in the book.

7. He sang a good song, told a good story, and could crack a severe jest with all the *acumen* of one of Shakespeare's jesters.

B

1. You have more discernment of character than is common at your age.

2. I cannot call riches better than the baggage—the impedimenta of virtue.

3. Burns, in the eyes of many, was a bad man, the impure vehicle of fine verses.

4. Hypnotism is now on a sound scientific basis and has an increasingly valuable place in the armamentarium of the medical profession.

LESSON 36

Compound Nouns: Perfect-Participial Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix. Multiple-Base Com- pounds: Dependent Compounds (*Cont'd*)

(c) *Perfect-Participial Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix.*
Certain suffixes may be attached to the bases of perfect participles to form compound nouns.

1. Perfect-participial base plus the Latin suffix **-or** > English *-or*, forming agent nouns in which it denotes 'that which' or 'the person who' performs the action indicated in the base.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	BASE	LATIN COM- POUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
movēre 'to move'	mōtus	mōt-	mōtor	<i>motor</i>

This suffix must be distinguished carefully from the suffix *-or* which is attached to the bases of present infinitives to form abstract nouns (see Lesson 35).

2. Perfect-participial base plus the Latin suffix **-rix** > English *-rix*, forming feminine agent nouns in which it denotes 'she who' performs the action indicated in the base.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	BASE	LATIN COM- POUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
testāri 'to be a witness,' 'to make a will'	testātus	testāt-	testātrix	<i>testatrix</i>

Many feminine agent nouns, however, are formed with the suffix *-ress*, which is ultimately derived from the Greek.

3. Perfect-participial base plus the Latin suffix **-ūra** > English **-ure**, forming abstract nouns in which it denotes 'act of' or 'result of the act of.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	BASE	LATIN COM- POUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
frangere 'to break'	frāctus	frāct-	frāctūra	<i>fracture</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (Cont'd). The suffix **-culture** 'cultivation of' (<**cult-**, base of the perfect participle of **colere, cultus** 'to cultivate' plus **-ūra**) is frequently used as the second member of dependent compounds.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
flōs 'flower'	flōr-	*flōricultūra	<i>floriculture</i>

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *aviator, commensurate, detonator, executor, incinerator, perambulator, preceptor, receptor, transgressor*. Wherever possible, form corresponding feminine agent nouns.

2. Word Formation: 'one who carries on a business,' 'one who works,' 'that which goads,' 'the cultivation of bees,' 'the cultivation of vines,' 'the cultivation of trees,' 'the result of the act of being opened,' 'the result of the act of painting,' 'the result of the act of building,' 'the result of the act of splitting,' 'that which draws,' 'the act of reading.'

3. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "*posture* of affairs"; "*tinctured* with inconsistency"; "to pass *strictures* on"?

4. List five Latin verbs from each of which English has formed: (a) an agent noun indicating the 'performer of the action'; and (b) one or more abstract nouns indicating the 'result of the action'—e.g., **creāre** 'to create': (a) *creator*; (b) *creature, creation*.

5. What English adjective means 'pertaining to a governor'? Was the adjective borrowed directly or through Old French? (See Supplementary Notes.)

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Among the agent nouns which were borrowed through Old French, a few have been so changed in form as scarcely to resemble their Latin ancestors. Thus *governor*, for example, comes from **gubernātor** 'steersman' (**gubernāre** 'to steer'); *ancestor* 'one who goes before,' from **antecessor** (**antecēdere**, **antecessus** 'go before'); *juror* from **jūrātor** (**jūrāre** 'to take an oath'); *donor* from **dōnātor** (**dōnāre** 'to give'); and *traitor* from **trāditor** (**trādere** 'to hand over,' 'to betray').

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. William Blake's talent as a painter was *commensurate* with his talent as a poet.
2. Give yourself no further concern about the *strictures* which the reviewer has passed on your book, for he makes no secret of his prejudices against your viewpoint.

B

1. Being men of birth, educated according to the custom of the age without tincture of letters, the Knights Templar scorned the ignoble occupations of a monastic life.
2. A man may have sat in a room for hours and not opened his teeth, and yet come out of that room a disloyal friend or a vile calumniator.
3. Nature, like a cautious testator, ties up her estate so as not to bestow it all on one generation.
4. The old sea dog started triturating some shavings of hard tobacco between his huge palms.

LESSON 37

Compound Adjectives: Present-Infinitive or Perfect-Participial Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix; Present-Infinitive Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix

(a) *Present-Infinitive or Perfect-Participial Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix.* Certain suffixes may be attached either to the present-infinitive base or to the perfect-participial base to form compound adjectives.

1. Present-infinitive or perfect-participial base plus the Latin suffix **-bilis** > *-ble* 'capable of being,' 'able to,' 'causing.'

When **-bilis** is attached to the bases of First-Conjugation verbs, the connecting vowel **-a-** is used; otherwise **-i-** is used. In many words borrowed through French, however, and in formations made in English, the connecting vowel **-a-** is used indiscriminately.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
penetrāre 'to pierce'	penetr-	penetrābilis	<i>penetrable</i>
horrēre 'to shudder'	horr-	horribilis	<i>horrible</i>
crēdere 'to believe'	crēd-	crēdibilis	<i>credible</i>
flectere, flexus 'to bend'	flex-	flexibilis	<i>flexible</i>

But:

dēpendere 'to hang down'	dēpend-	*dēpendibilis	<i>dependable</i>
------------------------------------	----------------	----------------------	-------------------

2. Present-infinitive or perfect-participial base plus the Latin suffix **-ilis** > *-ile* 'capable of being,' 'able to,' 'suitable for.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
docēre 'to teach'	doc-	docilis	<i>docile</i>
mittere, missus 'to send'	miss-	missilis	<i>missile</i>

(b) *Present-Infinitive Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix.* Certain suffixes may be attached to the bases of present infinitives to form compound adjectives.

1. Present-infinitive base plus the Latin suffix **-āx** (genitive **-ācis**). Adjectives so formed appear in English only with the suffix *-ous* (< **ōsus**) attached. The suffix *-acious* thus formed means 'given to,' 'abounding in,' 'inclined to,' or 'tending to.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
audēre 'to dare'	aud-	audāx (genitive audācis)	<i>audacious</i>

2. Present-infinitive base plus the Latin suffix **-ulus**. Adjectives so formed appear in English only with the suffix *-ous* (< **ōsus**) attached. The suffix *-ulous* thus formed means 'tending to,' 'addicted to,' or 'inclined to.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
tremere 'to tremble'	trem-	tremulus	<i>tremulous</i>

3. Present-infinitive base plus the Latin suffix **-idus** > English *-id* 'full of.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
vivere 'to live'	viv-	vividus	<i>vivid</i>

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *agile, arable, bibulous, capacity, commensurable, facile, fallacious, fervid, garrulous, intangible, irrevocable, rapidity, versatile, volatile.*

2. Word Formation: 'the state of not being able to be heard,' 'the state of not being able to be read,' 'not capable of being conquered,' 'inclined to talk,' 'the state of being inclined to fight,' 'tending to complain,' 'tending to believe,' 'tending to hang,' 'shining,' 'capable of being applauded.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *active, agile, belligerent, complaining, idle, indomitable, invincible, manifest, obscure, palpable, peaceable, pugnacious, querulous, satisfied.*

4. Using appropriate suffixes, form an English noun and an English adjective from each of the following Latin verbs: *habitāre* 'to dwell'; *probāre* 'to prove'; *corrīgere* 'to straighten out'; *admīrārī* 'to wonder at.'

5. Distinguish in meaning between: *probability* and *possibility*; *fallible* and *fallacious*; *credible* and *credulous*; *fervent* and *fervid*.

6. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: "laudable purpose"; "notable achievement"; "palpable darkness"; "querulous voice"; "voracious appetite"?

7. State which words in the following list are linguistically related and what the nature of the relationship is: *belligerent, capacity, constant, contact, conviction, dirigible, enrapture, gesture, inception, intangible, invincible, rapid, regent, stable.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. It is *incredible* that a person should attempt to take his own life when he has everything in the world to live for.

2. Let the *credulous* believe the mouthings of demagogues and fools.

3. What I have said I believe to be true, but I cannot vouch for it, since all of us are *fallible*.

4. The lawyer's reasoning was *fallacious*, for he had assumed as true that which, in the course of the trial, was demonstrated to be false.

5. When the weatherman reports that it will rain, it is highly *probable* that it will do so; but there is a *possibility*, too, that it may not, because weather forecasting is not yet an exact science.

6. There is no way of determining whether the productive capacity of the munition plants in this country is *commensurable* with the needs of the country in times of war.

B

1. The first charm of Japan is as intangible and volatile as a perfume.

2. My companion was a bibulous old fellow, much given to garrulity.

3. No one can be more offensive than a querulous, whining old woman.

4. The joys of youth are irrevocable.

5. He had the abominable faculty of telling huge palpable lies on all occasions.

6. Along the flat horizon, there arise frequent venerable towers of churches.

7. Some of our children are ineducable, and the time, energy, and resources spent on trying to educate them is viciously wasted.

LESSON 38

Compound Adjectives: Perfect-Participial Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix. Multiple- Base Compounds: Dependent Com- pounds (*Concl'd*)

(c) *Perfect-Participial Base Plus Adjective-Forming Suffix.* Certain suffixes may be attached to the bases of perfect participles to form compound adjectives.

1. Perfect-participial base plus the Latin suffix **-ōrius** > English **-ory**, forming adjectives from verbs.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
amāre 'to love'	amātus	amāt-	amātōrius	<i>amatory</i>

The suffix **-ōrium**, neuter singular of the adjective-forming suffix **-ōrius**, was used to form nouns in which it has the meaning 'place for or of,' 'that which pertains to or serves for.' (Cf. Lesson 15 for a similar use of **-ārium**.) The suffix **-ōrium** appears in English sometimes without change, though more commonly in the form **-ory**.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	BASE	LATIN COM- POUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
audire 'to hear'	auditus	audit-	auditōrium	<i>auditorium</i>
dormire 'to sleep'	dormitus	dormit-	dormitōrium	<i>dormitory</i>

2. Perfect-participial base plus the Latin suffix **-ivus** > English **-ive** 'given to,' 'tending to.'

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	BASE	LATIN COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
ēlūdere 'to evade'	ēlūsus	ēlūs-	*ēlūsivus	<i>elusive</i>

Adjectives formed with the suffix **-ivus** frequently appear in English as nouns—e.g., *motive*, *detective*.

Multiple-Base Compounds: Dependent Compounds (Concl'd). **-cīd-**, base of the present infinitive **caedere** (**-cīdere**) 'to cut,' 'to kill' was extended to **-cīda** 'one who' or 'that which kills,' and used to form nouns. It appears in English in the form *-cide*.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
māter 'mother'	mātr-	mātricīda	<i>matricide</i>

-cīd- was also extended to **-cīdium** 'killing,' and was used to form nouns. This, too, appears in English in the form *-cide*.

LATIN NOUN	BASE	LATIN DEPENDENT COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
māter	mātr-	mātricīdium	<i>matricide</i>

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *apprehensive*, *desultory*, *dilatory*, *invective*, *laboratory*, *parricide*, *peremptory*, *purgatory*, *tentative*.

2. Word Formation: 'brother-killer,' 'killing of infants,' 'king-killer,' 'killing of a father.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *apologetic*, *apprehensive*, *conclusive*, *decisive*, *deprecatory*, *elusive*, *evasive*, *fallacious*, *fearful*, *imperative*, *misleading*, *peremptory*, *tentative*.

4. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between: *transitive*, *transitory*, and *transient*; *deprecatory* and *derogatory*; *illusory*, *elusive*, and *allusive*.

5. What is the meaning of each of the following expressions: “*provocative* statement”; “*incisive* manner of speaking”; “*confiscatory* taxes”; “*dilatory* tactics”; “*illusory* hopes”; “*peremptory* command”?

6. Using appropriate prefixes and suffixes, form ten English adjectives from the following verbs: *facere* ‘to make’; *movēre* ‘to move’; *agere* ‘to do’; *rapere* ‘to seize.’

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

When the suffix *-ivus* passes through Old French, it frequently appears in English in the form *-iff*. Thus from **planctivus* ‘lamenting’ (*plangere*, *planctus* ‘to lament’), we have derived, through Old French, the noun *plaintiff* ‘one who laments injustice done him and consequently brings action against a defendant.’ *Plaintive* ‘expressive of sorrow,’ the doublet of *plaintiff*, is much closer in meaning to the original Latin. Similarly, from *captivus* (*capere* ‘to seize’), we have borrowed *captive* directly and its doublet *caitiff* through Old French. When borrowed through Modern French, *-ivus* may appear in English in the form *-if*—e.g., *motif*, doublet of *motive*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. A mountainous wave shook the boat, and, from the expressions on the faces of the passengers, it was evident that they were *apprehensive* for their lives.

2. My master’s command was *peremptory*, leaving me no choice but to obey.

3. The suggestions I am about to make are *tentative*, for future investigations may throw a different light on the whole matter.

4. I hope that this *deprecatory* letter will serve to dispel any feeling of pique you may have as a result of my careless words.

5. The thoughts expressed by Robert Browning in his poems are often *elusive*, but it is consoling to know that the poet himself was not always sure of the meaning of what he had written.

B

1. My hopes, like my fears, often prove illusive.
2. The contours of this predatory fish express extraordinary speed and power.
3. She actually defied him, though she was quite helpless, with some minatory sounds.
4. Our chief meal, to be nutritive, must be solitary.
5. There is no better way to suggest the eloquence of the report, its logic, and its incisive use of the English language than by citing the document itself.
6. In passing, I made an allusive reference to "dead cats," which was lost on my hearers.

LESSON 39

Review

A. Form and translate the perfect participle, present participle, and gerundive of each of the following verbs, listing, wherever possible, an English derivative alongside each verb form (derivatives may bear prefixes, suffixes, or both): **facere** (-iō) 'to make'; **pati** (-ior) 'to suffer'; **regere** 'to rule'; **audire** 'to hear.'

B. Read the passage given below. Make studies of all verbal derivatives (there are at least twelve), following the scheme indicated below. Rewrite the passage, wherever possible substituting for the words in question synonyms or synonymous expressions, preferably of non-Latin origin.

ENGLISH WORD	PREFIX (if any)	BASE	SUFFIX (if any)	CURRENT MEANING
<i>diffidence</i>	dis- 'lack- ing'	-fident-, base of the present participle <i>fidēns</i> , <i>fidētis</i> from <i>fidere</i> 'to trust'	-ia, form- ing ab- tract nouns	'humility,' 'modesty'

In the case of multiple-base compounds, substitute First Base for Prefix and Second Base for Base.

The speaker, with some diffidence, announced that he was the sole confidant of the Prime Minister and that the manifest confidence which the Prime Minister reposed in

him made him extremely reluctant to disclose any information beyond that which his plenipotentiary instructions allowed; but if, within the limits set by these instructions, he could clarify or supplement the matters under discussion without stultifying himself, he would gladly do so.

C. Choose from the parentheses the word that correctly fits the context. Check your choice from the dictionary. Use the rejected word in a sentence.

1. A course in ancient history will (compliment, complement) your study of Greek and Latin.

2. There was a political upheaval under the (regimen, regime) of Dardullas.

3. I am (confident, confidant) that matters will turn out well in the end.

4. The use of force seemed to be the only (effective, efficacious) way of obtaining what we wanted.

5. I could not understand the (illusion, allusion) to Andrew Jackson in the President's speech.

6. The lawyer resorted to underhand (trickery, artifice) to force me to comply with his wishes.

7. The effectiveness of the plan depends entirely upon the conditions (précedent, précédent) to its formation.

D. From the following list of words, select a synonym for each word given below in parentheses: *calumniator*, *cogent*, *eminently*, *errant*, *extravagant*, *piquancy*, *poignant*, *precisionist*, *transparent*, *violent*.

1. (compelling) reasons

2. to add (flavor) to

3. (notably) practicable

4. (excessive) claims

5. vile (slanderer)

6. (nomadic) life

7. (touching) regrets

8. (evident) honesty

9. hide-bound (pedant)

10. (furious) antipathy

E. State which words in the following list are linguistically related and what the nature of the relationship is: *appetite, artifact, assumption, competent, concurrent, consequent, consensus, consume, direct, dispel, efficient, excursus, executive, incisive, incorrigible, lecturer, legend, matricide, presentiment, obsession, providence, repulsive, revision, sediment, sentient.*

Latin Pronunciation

Vowels. Vowels may be long or short and are pronounced as follows:

LONG VOWELS

ā as in *father*

ē as in *they*

ī as in *machine*

ō as in *note*

ū as in *rude*

SHORT VOWELS

a as in *adrift*

e as in *eh?* (clipped short) or as *é* in French *été*

i as in *pin*

o as in *obey*

u as *oo* in *look*

Note: **y** was introduced at a comparatively late period to represent the sound of *upsilon* in words borrowed from the Greek, and has a pronunciation between that of Latin **u** and **i**, like the French **u** or the German **ü**.

Consonants. These are like their English counterparts, except for the following:

b before **s** and **t** is pronounced like *p*. **Urbs** is therefore pronounced “**urps**”; **optineō**, “**optineō**”.

c always has the English hard *c-* (*k-*)-sound (as in *can*), never the English soft *c-* (*s-*)-sound (as in *cider*).¹

g always has the English hard *g-* sound (as in *gun*), never the English soft *g-* (*j-*)-sound (as in *gem*).¹

j is always pronounced like *y* in *yolk*.

k, being almost everywhere replaced by *c*, is rarely encountered.

s is always pronounced with a sharp hissing sound (as in *sun*), never with the *z*-sound (as in *ties*).

¹ In English derivatives, *c* and *g* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe* are generally soft; elsewhere they are hard.

t always has the sound of *t* in *ten*, never the sound of *t* in *nation*.
v is always pronounced like *w* in *way*.

ph, **th**, and **ch** were probably pronounced like *p*, *t*, *k*, respectively, followed by an aspirate, or "breathing," *h*. For convenience, we may pronounce **ph** like *f*, **th** like *t*, and **ch** like the German *ch*.

Diphthongs. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

ae as *ie* in *pie*.

au as *ou* in *house*

ei as *ei* in *eight*

eu as *e* (short) plus *oo*, pronounced in rapid succession

oe as *oi* in *oil*

Note: In later Latin, **ae** and **oe** came to be spelled **ë**.

Accent. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first syllable. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (last syllable but one) if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong—e.g., **a-ré-na**, **in-caú-tus**—or if it is followed by two or more consonants or by **x**—e.g., **per-féc-tus**, **dē-fléx-us**; otherwise they are accented on the antepenult (the third syllable, counting from the end)—e.g., **ex-ér-ci-tus**, **sen-tén-ti-a**, **for-tís-si-mus**.

Vocabularies

Latin-English Vocabulary

[Words are listed according to parts of speech: first nouns, then adjectives, then verbs. Nouns, moreover, are listed according to declensions. Practices followed in the Special Vocabularies are also followed here (see Lessons 4, 6, 8, 10, and 23).]

NOUNS

First Declension

alumna foster daughter, pupil	glæba clod, land, soil
ancilla maidservant	glōria fame
angina quinsy	herba blade of grass, herb
anima breath, soul	hostia sacrifice, victim
aqua water	ira anger
ārea broad piece of level ground	lacūna ditch, pool, gap
arēna sand, sandy place	laetitia joy
aurōra dawn	lancea light spear
barba beard	līnea linen thread, line
bullā bubble, amulet	locusta locust, lobster
calumnia false accusation	lūxuria riotous living
catēna chain	medicīna healing art
causa reason, motive	membrāna skin, parchment
cella place of concealment	minūtia minute detail (<i>see minu-</i>
columna pillar	ere)
cōpula band, bond	nausea seasickness
corōna garland, crown	nota mark, sign
crūsta hard surface	orbita track made by a wheel
cūpa cask, barrel	pecūnia money
doctrīna teaching	penna feather
fallācia deceit (<i>see fallāx, fallā-</i>	pēnūria want
cis)	pinna feather
familia household	planta sprout
fibra filament	plūma feather
fossa ditch	poena punishment, penalty
gemma bud, precious stone	rapīna robbery
	rēgīna queen
	rota wheel
	ruīna falling, ruin

stella star
taberna hut, booth, tavern
terra earth
tuba trumpet
turba disorder, tumult
umbra shade
unda wave
ursula little she-bear
ūsūra using, interest, usury
venia forgiveness, indulgence
vertebra segment of the back-
 bone
via road, street
vīta life

Second Declension

aevum age
amulētum object used as a
 charm
annus year
armāmentārium armory (*see ar-
 māre*)
augurium divination
aurum (*or ōrum*) gold
auspiciūm divination
bellum war
caelum sky
cancer, cancrī crab, cancer
candēlābrum candlestick
cilium eyebrow
cumulus heap
deus god
diabolus devil
dominus master, lord
dorsum back
duellum war
exemplum sample, specimen
famulus servant
fātum utterance
fēstum holiday, feast
fiscus basket, purse, treasury

focus hearth
folium leaf
fulcrum bedpost, prop
fūmus smoke
fundus bottom
genius tutelary divinity
globus ball, sphere
grānum seed, grain
humus earth
imperium supreme power, com-
 mand
initium beginning
jocus jest
lārdum bacon, swine fat
lēgātus ambassador
liber, librī book
limbus edge, border
litterātus learned person
locus place
lucrum gain, profit
lūstrum purificatory sacrifice;
 period of five years
maritus husband (*see adjective
 maritus*)
mercennārius hireling
modus measure, manner, form
mundus universe
mūrus wall
nimbus rainstorm, cloud
nōdus knot
numerus number
oculus eye
odium hatred
officiūm service, duty
ōrum *see aurum*
oscillum swing
ōvum egg
pābulum food, fodder
palātum palate
pallium cover, cloak
pannus piece of cloth, rag

pīnus pine tree
porcus pig, hog
prōdigium omen, portent
pulpitum scaffold, platform
rēgnum kingdom
rīvus stream
saeculum race, age, world
sīgnum mark
soccus low-heeled, light-weight shoe
stimulus goad
taedium weariness
venēnum poison
ventus wind
vēnum sale
vesper, vesperī evening star, evening
vir, virī man
vīrus (*n*) poison
vitium fault
vitrum glass

Third Declension

apex, apicis point, summit
arbor, arboris tree
augur, auguris seer, diviner
avis bird
axis axis, axle
bilis bile, anger
cadāver, cadāveris (*n*) dead body
calix, calicis cup
canālis pipe, channel
carcer, carceris prison
cardō, cardinis hinge
carō, carnis flesh
cinis, cineris ashes
cliēns, clientis personal dependant, retainer
cōdex, cōdicis block, manuscript

cohors, cohortis enclosure, cohort
cor, cordis (*n*) heart
crātis wickerwork
crux, crucis cross
decor, decōris grace
dēns, dentis tooth
dignitās, dignitātis worth
drāma, drāmatis stage play
dux, ducis leader
ēditō, ēditōnis giving out, publishing
farrāgō, farrāginis mixed fodder, medley
fascis bundle; (*plural*) bundle of rods with an ax (*symbol of absolute power*)
febris fever
ferrūgō, ferrūginis iron rust
fłōs, flōris flower
foedus, foederis (*n*) covenant
fōns, fontis spring, fountain
frōns, frondis leaf
fūligō, fūliginis soot
fulmen, fulminis (*n*) lightning flash
germen, germinis (*n*) offshoot, bud
grex, gregis herd, flock
hērēs, hērēdis heir
histriō, histriōnis actor
hospes, hospitis stranger, guest, host
hostis enemy
ignis fire
insigne, insignis (*n*) mark
jūs, jūris (*n*) justice, law
juventūs, juventūtis youth
labor, labōris toil, work
latus, lateris (*n*) side
laus, laudis praise

legiō, legiōnis body of soldiers, legion
lemur, lemuris ghost (*used in the plural only*)
limen, liminis (*n*) threshold
mare, maris (*n*) sea
margō, marginis edge, border
Mārs, Mārtis Mars (*Roman god of war*)
māter, mātris mother
mel, mellis (*n*) honey
mēns, mentis mind
mercēs, mercēdis hire, pay
merx, mercis merchandise
mīles, mīlitis soldier
mōlēs, mōlis mass
mōns, montis mountain
mors, mortis death
mūnus, mūneris (*n*) service, duty, gift
nātiō, nātiōnis birth, tribe, nation
nepōs, nepōtis grandson, nephew
nox, noctis night
ōmen, ōminis (*n*) foreboding, sign
onus, oneris (*n*) load, burden
orbis ring
ōrdō, ōrdinis row, order
ōs, ōris (*n*) mouth
ovis sheep
pectus, pectoris (*n*) breast
pelvis basin
pēs, pedis foot
plēbs, plēbis (*plural plēbēs*) common people
quiēs, quiētis inaction
raziō, raziōnis reckoning, reason
sanguis, sanguinis blood
tempus, temporis (*n*) time
testis witness

valētūdō, valētūdinis health, ill-health
vertex, verticis whirl, top
vertigō, vertiginis whirling, dizziness
vestis clothes
virāgō, virāginis mannish woman
vīs force
vīscus, vīsceris (*n*) inner parts of the body
voluntās, voluntātis will, choice
vortex, vorticis whirl
vōx, vōcis voice, sound
vulnus, vulneris (*n*) wound

Fourth Declension

arcus bow
artus joint
cāsus fall
cēnsus numbering and rating of citizens
cornū (*n*) horn
fluctus wave
fluxus flowing (*see fluere*)
manus hand
nexus interlacing
passus step, pace
porticus colonnade
portus harbor
rītus religious ceremony
sēnsus perception, feeling
status station, position
ūsus use, practice (*see ūti*)
versus line, verse

Fifth Declension

congeriēs heap, mass
diēs day
dīluviēs flood
faciēs appearance, form
fidēs faith

rabīēs rage, madness
rēs thing
spēs hope

ADJECTIVES

absurdus out of tune, harsh-sounding
acūtus sharp (*see* *acuere*)
aemulus emulating, rivaling
aequus equal, fair
albus white
almus nourishing
amoenus pleasant
augustus sacred, majestic
aureus (*or* *ōreus*) golden
avārus grasping, greedy
beātus happy
bellus pretty, fine
benīgnus kind
bonus good
canārius pertaining to dogs (*canis*); *Canāria* (*īnsula*) island noted in Roman times for its large dogs
capāx, capācis roomy
castus morally pure
cēterus the rest
cōmicus of comedy
cōmis courteous, kind
crassus fat, gross
crīspus curly-headed, quivering
curtus shortened, short, broken
decōrus becoming, fitting
dīrus ill-omened
fallāx, fallācis deceitful
forestis having to do with that which is out of doors (*foris*); — *silva* a wood lying outside the walls of a park
fortior, fortiōris stronger (*comparative of fortis*)

fortis brave, strong
frigidus cold
fuscus dark
gelidus icy cold
germānus *of brothers and sisters*
full, own (*see germen*)
inānis empty
integer, integrī untouched, whole
ipsissimus (*superlative of ipse* 'self,' 'own') veriest, very own
jējūnus fasting, hungry, dry
lividus bluish, blue
lūcidus clear, bright
lūridus pale yellow, ghastly
macer, macri lean
marītus *of marriage (see noun marītus)*
medicus *of healing, medicinal*
medius middle
mītis mild, soft
modicus *in proper measure (see noun modus)*
mollis soft
multus (*comparative plūs, plūris* 'more') much
neuter (*base neutr-*) neither one nor the other
noster, nostri our
novus new
omnis (*dative omnibus* 'for all')
all
pār, paris (*ablative paribus*) equal
paucus few, little
paulus small
plānus even, level, clear
plēnus full
plūs, plūris more (*see multus*)
posterus (*comparative posterior, posteriōris* 'later') coming after
postumus (*or posthumus*) last,

late-born (*The h is due to association with the noun humus 'ground.'*)

prīnceps, prīncipis first in order
 prior, priōris former, superior
 prōnus turned forward, inclined
 pusillus very little
 quantus how much
 rārus thin
 rōbustus oaken, hard, strong
 rotundus round
 rūfus red
 sānctus holy (*see sancīre*)
 satur, saturī full, sated
 sinister, sinistri left, on the left
 sōbrius not drunk, sober
 sollemnis annual, solemn
 sterilis unfruitful
 stultus foolish
 suāvis sweet
 supīnus backward, on the back
 suus one's own
 tacitus silent (*see tacēre*)
 tenuis thin
 tōtus all, whole
 trītus worn out (*see terere*)
 ūnus one
 vacuus empty
 vapidus tasteless, insipid
 veterīnus of beasts of burden
 (veterīnae)

VERBS

acuere, acūtus sharpen
 alere, alitus nourish
 ambulāre walk, walk about
 arāre plough
 armāre arm
 audīre, audītus hear
 bibere, — drink

bullīre, bullītus bubble, boil
 candēre, — be a glowing white
 cantare (-centāre) sing, use en-
 chantments
 carpere, carptus (-cerpere,
 -cerptus) pluck
 castigāre correct, punish
 cavillāri jeer, mock
 cernere, crētus separate, per-
 ceive
 clāmāre cry out
 clangere, — peal
 colere, cultus till, cultivate
 condere, conditus store
 decēre, — be seemly, be fitting
 dēsiderāre long for
 domināri be master, dominate
 dormīre, dormītus sleep
 emere, ēmptus take, buy
 facere (-iō), factus (-ficere, -fec-
 tus) make, do
 fatēri, fassus (-fītēri, -fessus)
 confess
 fendere, fēnsus strike
 fētēre, — stink
 figere, fixus fasten, fix
 fingere, fictus form, invent, feign
 finīre, finītus limit
 flāre blow
 fluere, fluxus flow
 habēre, habitus (-hibēre, -hibi-
 tus) have
 haerēre, haesum stick
 imminēre, — threaten
 jungere, jūctus join, yoke
 lambere, — lick
 laudāre praise
 luctāri wrestle, struggle
 lūdere, lūsus play
 luere, — (-lutum) loosen, wash,
 atone for

mācerāre make soft
mandāre (-mendāre) commit to, command
manēre, mānsum remain
meāre go, pass
mēnsūrāre measure
merēre, meritus deserve
mētīri, mēnsus measure
migrāre depart
-minēre, — project, threaten
minuere, minūtus lessen
monēre, monitus remind, warn
mōnstrāre point out
multāre punish, fine
mūnīre, mūnitus fortify, strengthen
mūtāre change
nectere, nexus bind
notāre mark
nūtrīre, nūtritus nourish
ōrāre speak, pray
ōrnāre equip, adorn
pacīsci, pactus agree, make a covenant
palpāre stroke, feel
pangere, pāctus (-pingere, -pāctus) strike, fasten
parāre prepare
patēre, — stand open
patī (-ior), **passus** suffer
peccāre miss, sin
petere, petitus seek
pingere, pictus paint
plaudere (*or* **plōdere**), **plausus** (*or* **plōsus**) clap the hands
plectere, plexus plait, twist
plēre, plētus fill
pōnere, positus place
portāre carry
postulāre ask, demand
precārī pray

premere, pressus (-primere, -pressus) press
prēndere, prēnsus lay hold of
prūrīre, — itch
pulsāre push against, throb
pungere, punctus prick
pūrgāre cleanse, purify
putāre clean, think, consider
quaerere, quaesitus (-quirere, -quisitus) seek
quatere (-iō), **quassus** (-cutere, -cussus) shake
rādere, rāsus scrape, shave
regere, rēctus (-rigere, -rēctus) rule
rīdēre, risus laugh
rōdere, rōsus gnaw
rogāre ask
rumpere, ruptus break
sacrāre (-secrāre) consecrate, declare accursed
salīre, saltus (-silīre, -sultus) leap
sancīre, sānctus to render sacred
saturāre fill, glut
scalpere, scalptus scratch
scandere, scānsum (-scendere, -scēnsum) climb
scīre, scītus know
secāre, sectus cut
sedēre, sessum (-sidēre, -sessum) sit
sentīre, sēnsum perceive, feel
sībilāre hiss, whistle
sidere, sessum sit down, settle
sistere, status cause to stand
sorbēre, — (-sorptus) suck
spargere, sparsus (-spergere, -spersus) strew, sprinkle
spondēre, spōnsus promise
stagnāre stagnate

statuere, statūtus (-stituere, -stitūtus) cause to stand
stringere, strictus bind tight
struere, strūctus pile up, set in order, build
stupēre, — be struck senseless
suādēre, suāsus advise, persuade
tacēre, tacitus be silent, keep silence
tegere, tēctus cover
tentāre (*or temptāre*) try
terere, trītus rub, wear out
terrēre, territus frighten
texere, textus weave
tingere, tinctus dip, dye
tollere, sublātus raise

tonāre, — thunder
torpēre, — be stiff, be numb
torquēre, tortus twist
trahere, tractus draw
tribuere, tribūtus assign, give
tritūrāre rub, thresh
trūdere, trūsus thrust, push
tumēre, — swell
unguere, ūctus smear, anoint
ūtī, ūsus use
vacillāre swing to and fro
velle (*base vol-*) wish
vellere, — (-vulsus) pluck, pull
vertere, versus turn
vorāre devour
vovēre, vōtus vow

English-Latin Vocabulary

able, able to -bilis	capable of being -bilis
act of -iō, -iōnis; -ūra	carry portāre
add addere, additus	carry on business negōtiāre
admire mirārī	carve sculperē, sculptus
ahead prō-	causing -ficus; *-ferōsus
angle angulus	certain certus
apart dis-; dī-; sē-	complain querī, questus
applaud plaudere (<i>or</i> plōdere), plausus (<i>or</i> plōsus)	composer of -ista
aside sē-	concerned: one — with -ista
ass asinus	conquer vincere, victus
away from ab-	correct corrigere, correctus
back re-	cultivation of -cultūra
backward retrō-	death mors, mortis
ball globus	deceit fallācia; fraus, fraudis
bear ferre, lātus	dip mergere, mersus
bearer -fer	disease morbus
bee apis	dog canis
before prae-; prō-; ante-	draw trahere, tractus
belief in -ismus	eagle aquila
believe crēdere, crēditus	ear auris
belly venter, ventris	earth terra
bend flectere, flexus	eating *-vorōsus
berry bacca	enliven animāre
bite mordēre, morsus	equal aequus
boy puer, puerī	everything omnis
break frangere, frāctus	eye oculus
bright: be — splendēre, —	false falsus
bring ferre, lātus	father pater, patris
brisk alacer, alacris	fiftieth (<i>i.e.</i> , half a hundred more) sēsqui
brother frāter, frātris	fight pūgnāre
build struere, strūctus	five quinque
burden onus, oneris (<i>n</i>)	flock grex, gregis

flower <i>flos, floris</i>	-like <i>-inus; -ālis</i>
foot <i>pēs, pedis</i>	limit <i>finire, finitus</i>
form <i>fōrma</i>	line <i>linea</i>
fortify <i>mūnīre, mūnītus</i>	liquid: be — <i>liquēre, —</i>
fox <i>vulpēs, vulpis</i>	little <i>-culus; -ellus; -ulus</i>
from <i>dē-</i>	love <i>amāre</i>
-ful <i>-ilis; -ālis; -ōsus; -lentus</i>	-ly <i>-ānus; -ilis; -ālis</i>
full <i>plēnus; — of -ōsus; -lentus</i>	make <i>facere (-iō), factus (-ficere, -fectus); -ficāre, -ficātus</i>
go <i>cēdere, cessus</i>	make ready <i>parāre</i>
goad <i>stimulāre</i>	man <i>vir, viri</i>
goat <i>hircus</i>	manly <i>virilis</i>
god <i>deus</i>	many <i>multī (plural of multus 'much')</i>
gold <i>aurum (or ōrum)</i>	mind <i>animus</i>
grass <i>herba</i>	move <i>movēre, mōtus</i>
great <i>māgnus</i>	name <i>nōmen, nōminis (n)</i>
group of <i>-ātus</i>	-ness <i>-itās; -itūdō; -or</i>
hand <i>manus (manu-)</i>	night <i>nox, noctis</i>
hang <i>pendēre, —</i>	not in-, il-
harmful <i>noxius</i>	office of <i>-ātus</i>
hear <i>audīre, audītus</i>	old man <i>senex, senis</i>
heart <i>cor, cordis (n)</i>	one <i>ūnus</i>
high <i>sublimis; altus</i>	one concerned with <i>-ista</i>
horse <i>equus</i>	one who <i>-or</i>
hundred <i>centum</i>	open <i>aperire, apertus</i>
inclined to <i>-āx, -ācis; *-āciōsus</i>	out (of) <i>ex-; ē-</i>
infant <i>infāns, infantis</i>	outward <i>externus</i>
inhabiting <i>*-colōsus</i>	paint <i>pingere, pictus</i>
instrument for <i>-culum; -or</i>	pale: be — <i>pallēre, —</i>
-ish <i>-ilis; -inus</i>	pebble <i>calx, calcis; scrūpus</i>
join <i>jungere, jūctus</i>	pertaining to <i>-āris</i>
juice <i>succus</i>	place <i>locus</i>
killer <i>-cida</i>	place for <i>-ārium</i>
killing of <i>-cidium</i>	previously <i>prae-</i>
king <i>rēx, rēgis</i>	producing <i>*-ferōsus</i>
land <i>terra</i>	read <i>legere, lēctus</i>
lead <i>dūcere, ductus</i>	receive <i>recipere (-iō), receptus</i>
leap <i>salīre, saltus (-silīre, -sultus)</i>	result of the act of <i>-ūra; -itūdō; -iō, -iōnis</i>
less <i>im-</i>	roll <i>volvere, volūtus</i>
lessen <i>minuere, minūtus</i>	
light <i>lūx, lūcis</i>	

rope <i>fūnis</i>	that which -or
run <i>currere, cursus</i>	think <i>putāre</i>
-ry - <i>āris</i>	three <i>tri-</i>
see <i>vidēre, vīsus</i>	through <i>per-</i>
seep <i>meāre</i>	throw <i>jacere (-iō), jactus (-ji-</i>
serve <i>servīre, servītus</i>	<i>cere, -jectus)</i>
seventy <i>septuāgintā</i>	tide <i>aestus (aestu-)</i>
shade <i>umbra</i>	tired <i>lassus</i>
shape <i>fōrma</i>	together <i>com-, con-</i>
sharpen <i>acuere, acūtus</i>	tooth <i>dēns, dentis</i>
shine <i>lūcēre, —</i>	tree <i>arbor, arboris</i>
side <i>latus, lateris (n)</i>	two <i>bi-</i>
sleep <i>somnus</i>	-ty - <i>ālis</i>
snake <i>serpēns, serpentis; vīpera</i>	under <i>sub-</i>
-some - <i>ōsus</i>	value: be of — <i>valēre, —</i>
spark <i>scintilla</i>	valve <i>valva</i>
split <i>findere, fissus</i>	vine <i>vītis</i>
square <i>quadr-</i>	walk <i>ambulāre; gradī (-ior),</i>
stand <i>stāre</i>	<i>gressus (-gredi, -gressus)</i>
standard <i>nōrma</i>	warm: be — <i>calēre, —</i>
star <i>stella</i>	wealth <i>ops, opis</i>
state of being - <i>iō, -iōnis; -itās</i>	wide <i>lātus</i>
stiff: be — <i>rigēre, —</i>	wild beast <i>fera</i>
story <i>fābula</i>	woman <i>fēmina</i>
strength <i>vīs</i>	wood <i>lignum</i>
stretch <i>tendere, tentus (or tēn-</i>	word <i>verbum</i>
<i>sus)</i>	work <i>labōrāre; operārī</i>
strong <i>fortis</i>	world <i>mundus</i>
suffer <i>patī (-ior), passus</i>	-y - <i>ālis; -āris; -īnus; -ōsus;</i>
sun <i>sōl, sōlis</i>	<i>-lentus</i>
talk <i>loquī, locūtus</i>	year <i>annus</i>
tending to *- <i>ulōsus</i>	youth <i>juvenis</i>

PART TWO

GREEK

CHAPTER I

Introduction

Greek civilization, language, and literature had already reached their highest development at a time when Rome was still an uncultured and insignificant state, with a language still in a primitive stage and with its literature as yet undeveloped. Nevertheless, while the period of growth of the two languages differed considerably, the relationship between them is close; they represent two daughter tongues of the same mother.

At some prehistoric time, a branch of a people whom, in lieu of a better name, we call "Indo-Europeans," swept into the Italian peninsula. This people brought with them a dialect of their native Indo-European speech which ultimately developed into Latin. Another branch of the same people entered the Greek peninsula, bringing with them an Indo-European dialect which finally gave rise to the Greek language. To be sure, these prehistoric movements are assumed and not historically proved; but the assumption of their existence is adequately supported by evidence of an intimate relationship between the syntax, grammar, and vocabulary of Latin and Greek, and of other related languages.

A cursory examination of Latin and Greek words will reveal one cognate after another, some of them strikingly similar in form and meaning.

LATIN	GREEK
<i>ferō</i> 'I bear'	phérō
<i>duo</i> 'two'	dúo
<i>trēs</i> 'three'	treis
<i>sex</i> 'six'	hex
<i>septem</i> 'seven'	heptá
<i>octō</i> 'eight'	oktō

All of these words are cognates and virtually identical in form and in meaning. Even in the case of *sex* and *hex*, *septem* and *heptá*, where the relationship is not so apparent, the presence of an initial **h** in the Greek word and of an initial **s** in the cognate Latin word is a consistent phonetic phenomenon. Compare the following Latin and Greek cognates:

LATIN	GREEK
<i>sēmi-</i> 'half'	hēmi-
<i>sequor</i> 'I follow'	hépomai
<i>sub</i> 'under'	hypó
<i>super</i> 'above'	hypér

Thus, in studying Greek, we are not dealing with something totally different, but simply with a closely related language that developed earlier than Latin.

Greek, unlike Latin, never came into direct contact with English. Latin was the tongue of the Western World during, and for centuries after, Rome's domination, and hence had a continuous influence, either direct or indirect, upon English. Greek, however, was the language of the Eastern World and hence its contacts with our tongue were few and indirect. The relatively small number of Greek words that entered English before the sixteenth century had originally been borrowed by Latin and brought by Latin (very often through French) into English. Many of these words, as we have already observed (Part One, pages 10-11),

came in with the introduction into England of Roman Christianity, which, since it originated among Greek-speaking peoples, had a vocabulary that was largely Greek. However, with the revival of learning in the sixteenth century, when scholars began to study the ancient classics, the first great influx of Greek words into our language began. From that time on, the borrowing of Greek words has continued uninterruptedly. The various sciences are still plundering the resources of Greek to supplement their technical vocabularies. Yet the influence of Latin in this process has never been completely lost, for virtually every Greek loan word has been Latinized in form before being borrowed by English. The study of Greek words which have been adopted in the last few centuries thus presents some problems that are familiar and others that are new. We shall find a number of Greek words which show a striking similarity to their Latin cognates; we shall find the same methods used in Anglicizing Greek words as in Anglicizing Latin words. However, individual words, their meanings, and the shifts of meaning that took place in their passage into English present totally new problems.

The student, too, will meet the Greek alphabet for the first time. This has been in continuous use from the eighth century B. C. down to modern times. Its obvious relation to our English alphabet is explained by the fact that both are ultimately derived from the same source. An alphabet used by the Phoenicians—an ancient Semitic race which carried on trade all over the Mediterranean—was borrowed by the Greeks at some time before the eighth century B. C. and split up into two branches. One developed into the Greek alphabet of ancient and modern times. The other, carried by Greek colonists to Italy and borrowed there by the Romans, gave rise to the Roman alphabet, from which our English alphabet is derived.

The Greek Alphabet.

FORMS	NAMES	GREEK FORMS IN ENGLISH LETTERS	GREEK SOUNDS
A	α	alpha	a as in <i>father</i>
B	β	bēta	b as in <i>bed</i>
Γ	γ	gamma	g as in <i>go</i>
Δ	δ	delta	d as in <i>do</i>
E	ε	epsīlon	e as in <i>met</i>
Z	ζ	zēta	dz as in <i>adze</i>
H	η	ēta	e as in <i>prey</i>
Θ	θ	thēta	th as in <i>thin</i>
I	ι	iōta	i as in <i>machine</i>
K	κ	kappa	k as in <i>kill</i>
Λ	λ	lambda	l as in <i>land</i>
M	μ	mū	m as in <i>man</i>
N	ν	nū	n as in <i>now</i>
Ξ	ξ	xī	x as in <i>tax</i>
O	ο	omicron	o as in <i>obey</i>
Π	π	pī	p as in <i>pet</i>
Ρ	ρ	rhō	r as in <i>road</i>
Σ	σ,ς	sigma	s as in <i>see</i>
T	τ	tau	t as in <i>tip</i>
Υ	υ	upsilon	like German <i>ü</i> or French <i>u</i>
Φ	φ	phī	ph as in <i>philter</i>
Χ	χ	chī	ch as in <i>loch</i>
Ψ	ψ	psī	ps as in <i>lips</i>
Ω	ω	ōmega	o as in <i>lone</i>

Note:

1. **Gamma** (γ) before γ, κ, ξ, or χ has the sound of *n* in *singer* and is represented in English as *n*. Thus, ἄγγελος 'messenger' is represented in English letters as **ángelos** and λάρυγξ as **lárɣnx**.

2. The form *s* is written at the end of a word; *σ* is used elsewhere.

3. In English derivatives, *ch* (χ) is pronounced like *k* (cf. *chaos*); ψ is pronounced like *ps* in *psychology* if it begins a word, but otherwise like *ps* in *ellipsis*.

Diphthongs.

FORMS	GREEK FORMS IN ENGLISH LETTERS	GREEK SOUNDS
αι	ai	ai as in <i>aisle</i>
ει	ei	ei as in <i>rein</i>
οι	oi	oi as in <i>soil</i>
υι	ui	<i>we</i>
αυ	au	ow as in <i>cow</i>
ευ	eu	<i>eh-oo</i>
ου	ou	ou as in <i>you</i>

Breathings. The letter **h** appearing at the beginning of some English transliterations of Greek words represents the sign ($\text{'}\text{'}$), called a "rough breathing," as in *hōra* ($\acute{\omega}\rho\alpha$) 'time,' which appears in the English noun *horoscope*. The rough breathing is placed over the initial vowel. However, if a word begins with a diphthong, it is placed over the second member—e.g., *αἵρεσις* *haíresis* 'choice'.

Whenever **rhō** begins a word, and sometimes when it follows another **rhō**, the rough breathing is placed over it—e.g., *ῥεῦμα*, *Πύρρῳς*. This combination of **rhō** with the rough breathing is transliterated **rh**—e.g., *rheúma*, *Pýrrhos*.

Transliteration. There is no uniformity of practice in the transliteration of Greek words into English. In this text, the practice of *Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, fifth edition (1938), is used.¹ The student will note that Greek words are not given in Greek but in English characters. The list of equivalents is given in the chart of the Greek

¹ Students using the *Concise Oxford Dictionary* will note the following: χ is there transliterated **kh**; γ before γ , κ , ξ , or χ is transliterated **g**; and υ is transliterated **u**.

alphabet under the heading Greek Forms in English Letters.

In order to distinguish ε (**epsīlon**), which is a short vowel, from η (**ēta**), which is long, the former is written **e** and the latter **ē**. In order to distinguish ο (**omīcron**), which is short, from ω (**ōmega**), which is long, the former is written **o** and the latter **ō**. Thus, σκηνή 'tent' is transliterated **skēnē** and ιδέα 'idea' is transliterated **idéa**; γλώσσα becomes **glōssa** and ὄργανον becomes **órganon**.

In borrowing Greek words, the Romans made a number of changes. In general, all Greek letters were transliterated in Latin with the equivalents used in English transliteration except the following:

GREEK FORM	LATIN EQUIVALENT	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
k as in akakía	becomes c as in acacia	<i>acacia</i>
ai as in sphaíra	becomes ae as in sphaera	<i>sphere</i>
ou as in Móusa	becomes ū as in Mūsa	<i>muse</i>
ei as in eirōneía	becomes ī (ē) as in īrōnīa	<i>irony</i>
oi as in amoibē	becomes oe as in amoeba	<i>amoeba</i>

Final **-ēs** (except in proper names) and **-ē**, the endings of Greek nouns of the First Declension, generally become **-a** (the Latin First-Declension ending) in Latin—e.g., **prophētēs** becomes **prophēta** (*prophet* in English) and **skēnē** becomes **scēna** (*scene* in English).

Final **-os** (masculine) and **-on** (neuter), the endings of Greek nouns of the Second Declension, become **-us** and **-um**, respectively (the Latin Second-Declension endings), in Latin—e.g., **kōnos** becomes **cōnus** (*cone* in English) and **ópion** becomes **opium** (*opium* in English).

Practically every Greek word which appears in English passed through Latin or underwent Latinization before it was borrowed. Such words, consequently, exhibit the

changes described in the preceding paragraphs. This fact must always be borne in mind.

In studying the derivation of English words from the Greek and in forming them from Greek elements, the student should take care to Latinize properly all consonants, vowels, and diphthongs. The words described in the following chapters (where no specific mention is made to the contrary) have all undergone Latinization.

EXERCISES

1. Determine the pronunciation and meaning of the following nouns: *alphabet*, *cedilla*, *delta*, *gammadion*, *iota*, *jot*, *pi*. Justify the current meanings of these nouns in the light of their etymological meanings.

2. What is the meaning of the expression "*alpha and omega*"?

3. Transliterate the following words into English characters, then give the Latin form of each: Σφιγξ, εἰρήνη, Σούνιον, Θουκυδίδης, ἥλιος, Ἰππαρχος, πατριώτης.

4. Transliterate the following Latin words, borrowed from the Greek, into Greek characters: *Patroclus*, *cynosūra*, *Mūsēum*, *concha*, *encōmīum*, *pharynx*, *apsis*, *Hesperus*.

CHAPTER II

Greek Nouns and Adjectives

As in Latin, all Greek nouns are declined. Unlike Latin, however, Greek has but three declensions: the First Declension, Second Declension, and Third Declension.

LESSON 1

The First Declension. Multiple-Base Compounds

The First Declension. The First Declension includes both feminine and masculine nouns. The former end in **-a** or **-ē** in the nominative case, the latter in **-ēs**. The base may be found by dropping these endings.

GREEK NOUN	BASE
glōssa 'tongue'	glōss-
akmē 'point,' 'prime'	akm-
idiōtēs 'private person,' 'ignorant person'	idiōt-

Feminine nouns of the First Declension ending in **-a** have been borrowed by English in two general ways: (1) virtually unchanged; or (2) Anglicized by dropping the ending or by changing it to silent *-e*.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
chīmaira 'she-goat,' 'chimera'	<i>chimera</i>
glōssa 'tongue'	<i>gloss</i>
gángraina 'cancerous ulcer'	<i>gangrene</i>

Many nouns which end in **-ia** appear in English with this ending changed to **-y**.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
harmonía 'joint,' 'proportion,' 'concord'	<i>harmony</i>
artêría 'windpipe,' 'artery'	<i>artery</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds. The combining forms **-mania** 'madness for or about,' 'infatuation for,' 'passion for,' 'craze for,' derived from the Greek noun **manía** 'madness,' and **-phobia** 'fear of,' derived from the Greek combining form **-phobia**, may be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds. The connecting vowel is usually **-o-**.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
dípsa 'thirst'	dips-	*dipsomania ¹	<i>dipsomania</i>
agorá 'market place'	agor-	*agoraphobia ¹	<i>agoraphobia</i>

VOCABULARY

aúra 'breeze,' 'breath'	idéa 'form,' 'kind'
dfáita 'way of life'	Moúsa 'Muse'
harmonía 'joint,' 'proportion,' 'concord'	sphaira 'ball,' 'globe'

EXERCISES

(Read carefully the Instructions on Procedure, pages xiii-xvi.)

1. Words for Special Study: *Anglomania, Anglophobia, Arcadian, claustrophobia, lyre, myrrh, nausea, orchestra, pyromania.*

2. General Vocabulary Study: Find ten English loan words derived from Greek First-Declension nouns. Using familiar suffixes, form other English words wherever possible. Find three First-Declension nouns which have been borrowed as given names. Write out the Greek nouns in Greek characters.

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *anger, cholera, concord, delirium,*

¹ For the meaning of the asterisk, see page 14.

discord, gloss, harmony, irony, mania, melody, note, sanity, sarcasm, satire.

4. In Greek, *chímaira*, in addition to its basic meaning of 'she-goat,' also meant 'a fabulous monster having the body of a goat, the head of a lioness, and the tail of a dragon.' In the light of this description, justify its current meaning in English.

5. Compare the general meaning of *irony* with its meaning in the phrase "Socratic *irony*." Which is closer to the original Greek?

6. Distinguish semantically between: *phantasy, fantasy, fancy*, and *fantasia*; *choler* and *cholera*. What is the linguistic relationship between these words?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The Greek noun *kánna* 'reed,' 'tube' has given rise in English to the doublets *canna* (a plant with brilliant flowers) and *cane*. With the addition of a suffix, it has yielded our English *cannon*, which is merely 'a large tube for firing missiles.' *Canyon*, passing into English through Spanish, is closely related to *cannon*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. I picked up a secondhand copy of *Hamlet* and found that it contained marginal notes—*glosses* as the more erudite would call them—written by a famous Shakespearean scholar.

2. When you think that the actor has exhausted his battery of looks, suddenly he sprouts out an entirely new set of features like a *hydra*.

3. A strange picture we make with our visions of fame and wealth, our foolish *chimeras*.

4. Among the many *phobias* with which the psychologists have burdened their fellow creatures, that of the fear of crowds—commonly called *agoraphobia*—and that of the fear of being cooped up in a narrow space—called *claustrophobia*—are two of the least dangerous.

5. Charles Lamb, after a nocturnal drinking bout with a High

Church priest, awoke with a heavy head and a heavier heart, groaning that he was fast becoming a *dipsomaniac*.

B

1. The harmony of Vergil is not translatable except by substituting sounds in another language for it.
2. The French are suffering from a strange variety of Anglo-mania, engendered by a fear of Hitler and his legions.
3. In France, patriotism is considered respectable, and its most characteristic symptom, xenophobia, is general.

LESSON 2

The First Declension (*Concl'd*). Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*)

The First Declension (*Concl'd*). Feminine nouns of the First Declension ending in **-ē** have been borrowed by English in three general ways: (1) virtually unchanged; (2) with the ending Latinized to *-a*; or (3) Anglicized by dropping the ending.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
akmē 'point,' 'prime'	<i>acme</i>
amoibē 'change'	<i>amoeba</i>
nymphē 'nymph,' 'bride,' 'young woman'	<i>nymph</i>

Masculine nouns of the First Declension ending in **-ēs** have been Anglicized by dropping the ending or by changing it to silent *-e*.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
idiōtēs 'private person,' 'ignorant person'	<i>idiot</i>
erēmītēs 'hermit'	<i>hermite</i> (<i>hermit</i>)

Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*). The combining form *-phone* 'sound,' 'voice,' derived from the Greek noun **phōnē** 'voice,' may be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds. Thus, by attaching *-phone* to *radi-*, base of the Latin noun **radius** 'ray,' the hybrid compound *radiophone* is formed.

VOCABULARY

chordḗ 'gut string,' 'chord'	scholḗ 'leisure,' 'lecture,' 'place for lectures'
despótēs 'absolute ruler'	skēnḗ 'covered place,' 'tent'
phōnḗ 'voice,' 'sound'	zōḗ 'life'
psychḗ 'breath,' 'life,' 'soul,' 'mind'	

EXERCISES

(Read carefully the Instructions on Procedure, pages xiii-xvi.)

1. Words for Special Study: *clavichord*, *conch*, *dictaphone*, *harpichord*, *Lethe*, *ode*, *plethora*, *saxophone*, *scenario*, *strophe*.

2. General Vocabulary Study: Find five English loan words derived from Greek First-Declension nouns. Using familiar suffixes, form other English words wherever possible. Write out the Greek nouns in Greek characters.

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *acme*, *culmination*, *despot*, *eremite*, *excess*, *idiot*, *Lethe*, *oblivion*, *plethora*, *recluse*, *shortage*, *simpleton*, *tyrant*.

4. There are two English nouns spelled *gnome* and two spelled *school*. Distinguish between each pair.

5. What linguistic relationship, if any, is there between *Lethe*, *Lethean*, and *lethal*?

6. *Sesame* is the name of a tropical plant valuable for the oil which is pressed from its seeds. Determine its pronunciation and etymology. Account for its meaning in the expression "open-sesame."

7. Justify the current meanings of *idiot* and "amoebaeal chorus" in the light of their etymological meanings.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The noun *chártēs* 'sheet of papyrus' (the ancient writing paper) is interesting for the variety of its development in English. It was borrowed by Latin in the form *charta* (cf. *Magna Charta*). The Latin word passed through French to become English *chart*, and through Italian and French to produce the doublet *card*. A Latin diminutive *chartula* entered English through Old French to yield *charter*, and through Italian and French to yield *cartel*. Other French and Italian derivatives of the word developed into

carton and its doublet *cartoon*. An Italian derivative *cartoccio* entered English through French to form *cartouche*, an architectural and archeological term. A corruption of *cartouche* produced a doublet, the more familiar word *cartridge*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. I had reached, as I thought, the *acme* of perfection in the development of my art, when I was dashed to earth by the devastating criticism of one whose judgment I respected highly.

2. The Atlantic Ocean, like a river of *Lethe*, may easily cause us to forget many of the things that happened on the other side.

B

1. There are few people who have not groaned under the plethora of goods that fell to the lot of the Swiss Family Robinson.

2. The possession of wealth or a foreign title is an open-sesame to many exclusive American social sets.

LESSON 3

The Second Declension. Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*)

The Second Declension. The Second Declension includes masculine and neuter nouns. The former end in **-os**, the latter in **-on**. The base may be found by dropping these endings.

GREEK NOUN	BASE
hýmnos 'song of praise'	hymn-
kraníon 'skull'	krani-

Masculine nouns of the Second Declension ending in **-os** have been borrowed by English in three general ways: (1) virtually unchanged; (2) with the ending Latinized to **-us**; or (3) Anglicized by dropping the ending, or by changing it to silent **-e**.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
kósmos 'order,' 'harmony,' 'universe'	<i>cosmos</i>
kolossós 'gigantic statue'	<i>colossus</i>
hýmnos 'song of praise'	<i>hymn</i>
thrónos 'chair of state'	<i>throne</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds (Cont'd). The combining form **-nomy** 'law,' 'arrangement,' 'science of,' derived from **-nomia**, the Greek combining form of **nómos** 'law,' may be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
ánthrōpos 'man'	anthrōp-	*anthrōponomia	anthroponomy

The combining form *phil-*, derived from the Greek adjective **phílos** 'loving,' may be prefixed to Greek nouns to form English multiple-base compounds where it has the meaning 'loving,' 'love of'; or it may be suffixed, in the form *-phile*, to Greek noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds where it has the meaning 'lover of.'

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
sophía 'wisdom'		philosophía	philosophy
bíblion 'book'	bibli-	*bibliophilos	bibliophile

VOCABULARY

chorós 'band of singers and dancers'	kýklos 'wheel,' 'circle'
dēmos 'people'	mýthos 'word,' 'speech,' 'fable'
kósmos 'order,' 'harmony,' 'universe'	

EXERCISES

(Read carefully the Instructions on Procedure, pages xiii-xvi.)

1. Words for Special Study: *crystal, Hippocrene, hippodrome, hippopotamus, nautilus, philanthropist, Philip, pore, trope.*

2. (a) General Vocabulary Study: Find ten English loan words derived from Greek Second-Declension nouns. Using familiar suffixes, form other English words wherever possible. Find three Greek Second-Declension nouns which have been borrowed as given names. Write out the Greek nouns in Greek characters.

(b) Word Formation: 'love of mankind,' 'loving harmony,' 'lover of the English,' 'house arrangement,' 'word battle.' Form three hybrid multiple-base compounds from the Greek noun *kýklos* 'wheel,' 'circle.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *Anglophile, chaos, colossal, cosmos, gigantic, irony, legend, miso-English, misosophy, myth, philosophy, satire.*

4. *Crocodile* is derived from the Greek **krokódeilos** 'lizard,' 'crocodile.' The belief was current at one time that crocodiles shed tears either when devouring or enticing their prey. In the light of this, justify the meaning of the expression "crocodile tears."

5. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *satyr* and *satire*.

6. What was the most familiar *colossus* of the ancient world? Can you name other *colossi*?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The Greek noun **dáktylos** means fundamentally 'finger.' It is also applied to a metrical foot of one long and two short syllables (— ∪ ∪), because of a fancied resemblance between this foot and the one long and two short bones of a finger. It is this sense which is preserved in the English loan word *dactyl*. *Date* (the fruit of the date palm) is a doublet of *dactyl*, and comes into English through Old French. The palm tree derived its name from the resemblance of its leaves to the palm of the hand (Latin *palma*). It is natural that the fruit of this tree should be termed its 'fingers (**dáktyloi**).'

The Greek **dískos** was a flat circular piece of stone or metal, differing only in this last respect from the modern *discus*, which is made of wood, weighted with metal. The discus throw was a standard Greek field event as far back as heroic times. The development of the word in English has been almost as rich as that of **chártēs**. The noun was borrowed by Latin in the form *discus*, and passed from Latin into English to yield the doublets *discus* and *disc*. The Latin word took on the meaning 'plate,' a sense which a further derivative, *dish*, preserves. From the meaning 'table,' which *discus* had in Medieval Latin, the meaning of *desk*, another derivative, may easily be understood. From 'table' to 'raised platform' is a simple step; hence the sense of *dais*, the fifth English derivative, the form of which was badly distorted in passing through Old French.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

What if there were no center to the universe but just one alley after another—a *labyrinth* without end or issue.

B

1. Dante's cosmos, for all its mythical idealism, was not so false as not to have a hell in it.
2. Dante seems to be a cosmic poet and to have escaped the anthropocentric conceit of romanticism.
3. Our most elegant universities and private schools are steeped in the Anglophile tradition.
4. *Anthony Adverse*, in addition to its other riches, is a veritable thesaurus of faulty construction and makeshift diction.

LESSON 4

The Second Declension (*Concl'd*). Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*)

The Second Declension (*Concl'd*). Neuter nouns of the Second Declension ending in **-on** have been borrowed by English in three general ways: (1) virtually unchanged; (2) with the ending Latinized to *-um*; or (3) Anglicized by dropping the ending, or by changing it to silent *-e*.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
kōlon 'limb,' 'clause'	<i>colon</i>
kraníon 'skull'	<i>cranium</i>
pétalon 'leaf'	<i>petal</i>
próúnon 'plum'	<i>prune</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*). The combining forms *-meter* 'measure of,' 'instrument or means for measuring,' derived from the Greek noun **métron** 'measure,' and *-metry* 'art, process or science of measuring,' derived from **-metría**, the Greek combining form of **métron**, may be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
chrónos 'time'	chron-	*chronometron	<i>chronometer</i>
gē 'earth'	ge-	geōmetría	<i>geometry</i>

VOCABULARY

bíblion 'book'	kéntron 'sharp point,' 'center'
eidólon 'image,' 'phantom'	métron 'measure'
érgon 'work'	órganon 'tool,' 'instrument'

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *absinth*, *canister*, *emporium*, *tympanum*.

2. (a) General Vocabulary Study: Find five English loan words derived from Greek Second-Declension nouns. Using familiar suffixes, form other English words wherever possible. Write out the Greek nouns in Greek characters.

(b) Word Formation: 'instrument for measuring rhythm,' 'instrument for measuring the eye,' 'eye measurement,' 'star arrangement,' 'gold flower.' Form hybrid multiple-base compounds meaning: 'instrument for measuring speed,' 'measure of $1\frac{1}{100}$,' 'measure of $1\frac{1}{1000}$.'

3. Determine the etymology of: *cymbal* and *chime*; *metal* and *mettle*. What is the linguistic relationship between each pair? Which word in each pair was borrowed earlier?

4. Note the meaning of the Greek noun *tálanon*. Read the *New Testament* parable recorded in *St. Matthew*, XXV, 14-30, and account for the meaning of the English derivative *talent*.

5. Justify the current meanings of *museum* and *electric* in the light of their etymological meanings.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

B

1. The scene depicting Mr. Crawley's collision with the Bishop's wife in *Vanity Fair* is the chief ganglion of the tale.

2. Faced with the prospect of failure and with no one at my side, I had to show my mettle for the first time in my life.

LESSON 5

The Third Declension

The Third Declension includes nouns of all genders. In some cases, the base of Third-Declension nouns is identical with the nominative case. When, as is extremely common, the nominative case does not reveal the base, the genitive case is also given and must be studied along with the nominative. The genitive almost always ends in **-os**, and the base may be found by dropping this ending.

GREEK NOUN	BASE
thōrax, thōrakos 'chest,' 'breastplate'	thōrak-
pyramís, pyramídos 'pyramid'	pyramid-
árōma, arōmatos 'fragrance'	arōmat-
daimōn 'divinity'	daimon-
mártyr 'witness'	martyr-

Greek Third-Declension nouns ending in **-x** generally appear in English virtually unchanged.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
thōrax, thōrakos 'chest,' 'breastplate'	<i>thorax</i>
phlox, phlogós 'flame'; name of a plant	<i>phlox</i>
ónyx, ónychos 'claw,' 'fingernail,' 'veined gem'	<i>onyx</i>

Greek nouns of the Third Declension ending in **-as** and **-is** have been borrowed by English in two general ways: (1) virtually unchanged; or (2) Anglicized by dropping the ending of the nominative or genitive case, or by changing the ending to silent **-e**.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
aigís, aigídos 'shield of Zeus or Athena'	<i>aegis</i>
Átlas, Átlantos 'Atlas'	<i>atlas</i>
tígris, tígridos 'tiger'	<i>tiger</i>
lampás, lampádos 'torch'	<i>lamp</i>
pyramís, pyramídos 'pyramid'	<i>pyramid</i>
myriás, myriádos '10,000'	<i>myriad</i>
apsís, apsídos 'fastening,' 'wheel,' 'bow,' 'arch'	<i>apse</i>

EXERCISES

1. Adjectives for Special Study: *Atlantic, iridescent, laryngeal, lynx-eyed, stygian.*

2. Synonyms and Antonyms: *aegis, celestial, climacteric, countless, critical, infernal, myriad, protection, stygian.*

3. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between: *oread, naiad, maenad, and dryad; calyx and calix.* Give the plural forms of these nouns in English.

4. Criticize the formation and meaning of the adjective *climactic.* Distinguish it from *climatic* and *climacteric.*

5. Does *decade* necessarily mean 'a period of ten years'? Compare the development of its meaning from the original Greek with that of *myriad.* Find in the General Vocabulary three other Greek Third-Declension nouns ending in *-as* (with a numerical significance) that have been borrowed by English.

6. Form, from Greek elements, an English multiple-base compound meaning 'giant battle.'

7. What is the adjective formed from *apse*? Explain the form.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

A few Greek mythological names belonging to the group discussed in this lesson have become or given rise to common words in English. Thus the **Phoénix** was a mythological bird believed to live through a cycle of years, burn itself, then rise from its ashes and live through another cycle. The English use of *phoenix* in the sense 'paragon' arose from the fact that the **Phoénix** was

unique; no more than one ever lived in the world at any one time. The **Styx**, whence our adjective *stygian*, was a river of the underworld. The **Sphinx**, in Greek mythology, was a winged monster with the head and bust of a woman and the body of a lion. **Iris** was the messenger of the Greek gods and goddess of the rainbow.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The storm brought *stygian* darkness, broken by blinding flashes of lightning. We felt that all the powers of Hell and Heaven had been let loose upon us.

2. We called the cat *Phoenix*, for she had more than the allotted nine lives; she was practically immortal. Only the fire and the ashes were lacking.

3. Our country has reached a kind of grand *climacteric*. Significant changes are taking place in the political and social body.

4. The cheerful expressions on the faces of the Congressmen and the bustle at the railroad ticket office were *climactic* signs: Congress was about to adjourn.

B

1. My rheumatism has reduced me to the miserable situation of the Sphinx's riddle. I walk on three legs.

2. The United States has accomplished many ambitious public projects under the aegis of the New Deal.

LESSON 6

The Third Declension (*Cont'd*). Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*)

The Third Declension (Cont'd). Greek nouns of the Third Declension ending in **-ma** have been borrowed by English in two general ways: (1) virtually unchanged; or (2) Anglicized by dropping the ending **-a**, or by changing it to silent *-e*.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
árōma, arōmatos 'fragrance'	<i>aroma</i>
chásma, chásmatos 'yawning hollow'	<i>chasm</i>
schéma, schématos 'shape,' 'outline,' 'plan'	<i>scheme</i>

Greek nouns of the Third Declension ending in **-ōn**, **-an**, and **-ēn** appear in English virtually unchanged.¹

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
aiōn 'space of time,' 'lifetime'	<i>eon</i> (<i>aeon</i>)
Titán 'Titan'	<i>titan</i>
seirén 'siren'	<i>siren</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds (Cont'd). The combining forms *-latry* 'worship of,' 'fanatical devotion to,' derived from the Greek noun **latreía** 'service,' and *-later* 'worshipper of,' 'one fanatically devoted to,' derived from the Greek combining form **-latrēs**, may be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds.

¹ The ending **-ōn** was sometimes changed in Latin to **-ō**—e.g., Plátōn became *Platō*.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
daímōn	daimon-	*daimonolatreia *daimonolatrēs	<i>demonolatry</i> <i>demonolater</i>

VOCABULARY

chrōma, chrōmatos (chrōm- or chrōmat-) 'color'	daímōn, daímonos 'divinity' eikōn, eikōnos 'image'
--	---

EXERCISES

1. (a) General Vocabulary Study: Find four English loan words derived from Greek Third-Declension nouns. Using familiar suffixes, form other English words wherever possible. Write out the Greek nouns in Greek characters.

(b) Word Formation: 'the worship of angels,' 'a worshipper of idols,' 'the worship of martyrs,' 'a worshipper of images,' 'the worship of books,' 'war (against) images,' 'ground lion.'

2. Synonyms and Antonyms: *aroma, calm, chasm, device, fragrance, gorge, halcyon, icon, image, scheme, stormy.*

3. Justify the current meanings of *siren, halcyon, python, and paean* in the light of their etymological meanings.

4. What is "canon law"?

5. Distinguish between *eon, age, era, and epoch.*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. A *demon* drives them on, and this demon, divine and immortal in its apparent waywardness, is their inmost self.

2. Books are languid pleasures, but I find certain books vital and *spermatik*, not leaving the reader what he was.

3. The leader of the cult was accused of *demonolatry*. He professed to have converse with the spirits of the dead.

B

1. The Japanese are now engaged in a titanic struggle to absorb the continent of Asia.

2. A light shone from her eyes as bewitching as those of a *siren*.

LESSON 7

The Third Declension (*Concl'd*)

Greek nouns of the Third Declension ending in **-ēr, -ōr, -ar,** and **-yr** appear in English virtually unchanged.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
charaktēr 'stamp'	<i>character</i>
Néstōr 'aged and wise counselor in the <i>Iliad</i> '	<i>Nestor</i>
néktar 'drink of the gods'	<i>nectar</i>
mártyr 'witness'	<i>martyr</i>

Greek nouns of the Third Declension ending in **-is** and **-os** have been borrowed by English in two general ways: (1) virtually unchanged; or (2) Anglicized by changing the ending to silent *-e*. The base of such nouns may be found by dropping the **-is** or **-os**.

GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
krísis 'decision,' 'decisive moment'	<i>crisis</i>
páthos 'suffering'	<i>pathos</i>
paúsis 'ceasing'	<i>pause</i>

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *aerodrome, aeronaut, aeroplane, hydraulic, philanderer.*

2. (a) General Vocabulary Study: Find five English loan words derived from Greek Third-Declension nouns. Write out the Greek nouns in Greek characters.

(b) Word Formation: 'fear of water,' 'water measure,' 'weight measure.'

3. Select pairs of synonyms from the following list: *anticlimax,*

bathos, character, crisis, disposition, flirt, juncture, pathos, philanderer, suffering.

4. Distinguish between *bathos* and *pathos*.
5. Justify the figurative sense of *oasis* in the light of its etymological meaning.
6. What is the origin of the word *gas*? What is its linguistic relationship, if any, to *chaos*?

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The essay was calculated to excite feelings of pity and sorrow in the reader, but the commonplace situations and tedious style amounted only to *bathos*.
2. Because of his wise counsel to his party, he was appropriately called the *Nestor* of American politics.
3. No woman took the flatteries of the man seriously, for he was, as they were all too well aware, a confirmed *philanderer*.

B

1. After diligently reading the novel, I came upon a passage of such quiet beauty that it was a welcome oasis in an otherwise arid book.
2. The union of the democratic nations against the dictator should give him pause in his treatment of minorities.
3. The fisherman, despite his life on the sea, had a perpetual fear of being drowned. He was suffering from hydrophobia, though he had never been nipped by a dog.

LESSON 8

Greek Adjectives

Hoi polloi consists of the masculine plural of the Greek adjective **polýs** 'much,' 'many' and the definite article **hoi**, borrowed by English without change. It means 'the many' (i.e., 'the mob,' 'the general run of people') both in Greek and in English. The majority of Greek adjectives, however, that have been borrowed by English appear as the first element of multiple-base compounds. The connecting vowel, if necessary, is **-o-**.

GREEK ADJECTIVE	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
mégas 'great'	mega-	* megaphōnē	<i>megaphone</i>
	megal-	* megalomania	<i>megalomania</i>
mikrós 'small'	mikr-	* mikroskopos	<i>microscope</i>
polýs 'much,' 'many'	poly-	polygamos	<i>polygamous</i>
pas (neuter pan)	pan-	* panorama	<i>panorama</i>
'all,' 'every'	pant-	pantómimos	<i>pantomime</i>

VOCABULARY

autós 'self'	néos 'new'
ídios 'one's own,' 'proper,' 'peculiar'	pas (pan- or pant-) 'all,' 'every'
kakós 'bad'	polýs (poly-) 'much,' 'many'
mégas (mega- or mega-) 'large,' 'great'	pseudés 'lying,' 'false'
mikrós 'small'	

Form a multiple-base compound from each of the above adjectives. Hybrid formations are permissible.

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *autonomous*, *baritone*, *dinosaur*, *heterodox*, *heterogeneous*, *homogeneous*, *orthodox*, *pandemonium*, *panoply*, *polytheism*.

2. Word Formation: 'many-colored,' 'false name,' 'all-colored,' 'small-headed,' 'long-headed,' '(taking) all shapes,' 'great stone,' 'empty tomb,' '(quadruped with) a thick skin,' 'heat measure,' '(knowing) many tongues.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *autonomous*, *dumb show*, *heterodox*, *heterogeneous*, *homogeneous*, *independent*, *macrocosm*, *microcosm*, *monoglot*, *nom de plume*, *orthodox*, *pantomime*, *polyglot*, *pseudonym*.

4. The neuter of Greek adjectives in **-os** ends in **-on**. Select from the General Vocabulary four Greek adjectives that have been borrowed by English in their neuter form virtually unchanged or Latinized.

5. On the basis of their etymology, distinguish between: *paleozoic*, *mesozoic*, and *cenozoic* (*cainozoic*); *paleolithic*, *neolithic*, and *ololithic*; *monotheism*, *polytheism*, and *pantheism*.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Several familiar place names are derived from Greek multiple-base compounds containing adjective bases. *Mesopotamia*, the land situated between the Tigris and the Euphrates, is well named, since, etymologically, it means '(in) the middle (**mésos**) of the river (**potamós**) country.' *Naples* goes back to the Greek **Neápolis** 'new (**néos**) city (**pólis**).' The same noun **pólis** appears in several place names—e.g., *Tripoli* 'three cities,' *Constantinople* 'Constantine's city,' and *Gallipoli* 'beautiful (**kalós**) city.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Ships are little worlds; rather, each is a *microcosm* of a world.

2. There could be no doubt that the dictator was suffering from *megalomania*, for in his mad delusion he believed that the whole world could be brought under his sway.

3. All men keep the farm in reserve as an *asylum*, where, in case of mischance, they may hide their poverty.

B

1. Our farmers were orthodox Calvinists, mighty in the *Scriptures*.

2. All the hills in the lower levels were like an archipelago in a fog-formed Aegean.

3. For youth and all ductile and congenial minds, Pan alone, of all the classical hierarchy, survives in triumph.

4. The delegates to the convention, aided and abetted by a large turnout of *hoi polloi*, shouted down their opponents.

5. Democracy has swamped the colleges and, under its impetus, college men tend more and more to reverse evolution and to develop from heterogeneity to homogeneity.

6. I am no more abashed at having been a red-hot Socialist with a panacea for the ills of the world than at having been a suckling infant.

7. The approach of the bombers struck horror into the souls of the people, but after the bombs had hit their marks and exploded in the heart of the city, pandemonium reigned.

LESSON 9

Greek Numerals

Greek numerals generally appear in English as the first element of multiple-base compounds.

GREEK NUMERAL	COMBINING FORM
mónos 'one,' 'single,' 'alone'	mon- 'one,' etc.
prōtos 'first'	prōt- 'first'
dis 'twice,' 'twofold,' 'double'	di- 'twice,' etc.
deúteros 'second,' 'secondary'	deuter- 'second,' 'secondary'
treis 'three'	tri- 'triple,' 'having three'
téssares 'four'	tetra-, tetr- 'having four'
pénte 'five'	penta-, pent- 'having five'
hex 'six'	hexa-, hex- 'having six'

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *Deuteronomy*, *diphthong*, *hexagon*, *monopoly*, *Pentateuch*, *protocol*, *tetrameter*, *trimeter*.

2. Word Formation: '(having) three feet,' '(figure of) five angles,' 'single marriage,' 'measure of six (feet),' 'measurement of three-angled (figures),' 'mother city,' 'city of corpses,' 'madness on a single (subject),' 'single tone.' Coin English words from Greek elements meaning: 'single-footed,' 'three-armed,' 'double-breasted.'

3. What Greek-derived words are synonymous, element for element, with the following Latin-derived words: *quadruped*, *quadrangle*, *triform*?

4. What English hybrid is equivalent etymologically to the Greek *monóphthalmos*?

5. Explain the title of Boccaccio's collection of tales, *The Decameron*.

6. What mythological characters were called "circle eye"?

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Bilingual children who come from homes where English is not spoken or is used occasionally make just as much progress in their studies as *monoglots*.

2. His interest in tropical fish started as a hobby; before long his hobby became a harmless mania; but now, poor soul, he sees fish in trees as well as in running brooks. He is a hopeless *monomaniac*.

B

1. It is questionable whether we have done the monogamic doctrine any real good by the persecution of a few polygamists.

2. I cannot see the wit of calling a fighting ship "she," nor is there much more sense in dubbing a big, virile city a "metropolis," when it could, with more accuracy and propriety, be called a "patropolis."

LESSON 10

Review

A. Determine the etymology, pronunciation, and meaning in its context of each word in the following passage belonging to the classes of words studied in this chapter:

A group of Philadelphia Quakers took an aeroplane from Naples to Constantinople in order to arrange with the authorities of that metropolis for the care of destitute refugees from Armenia. This cosmopolitan city teemed with peoples from every corner of the globe—monoglots, idolaters and iconoclasts, peoples of varying ethical standards, monogamists and polygamists.

The headquarters of the sect in the heart of the city became an oasis for myriads of refugees distressed in body and soul. The strength of character of this little band of philanthropists, shown at a time of crisis in the Near East, should give pause to those misanthropes who believe that the world is going to the dogs.

B. Choose from the parentheses the word that correctly fits the context. Check your choice from the dictionary. Use the rejected word in a sentence.

1. The composer wove a potpourri of Negro spirituals into a (fantasia, phantasy).

2. The (satire, satyr) wantoned mischievously through the woods.

3. The state had reached its grand (climacteric, climactic), after which there was a change for the better.

4. A feeling of (pathos, bathos) was awakened in us at the sight of the destitute family.

5. The hero longed to quaff the (lethal, Lethean) waters of the River of Forgetfulness.

6. It is no easy task to amalgamate immigrants from so many countries into a (heterogeneous, homogeneous) group.

7. The little town on the Bay of Naples, with its visitors from all the countries of the world, has become a kind of (macrocosm, microcosm).

C. From the following list, select a synonym for each word or expression given below in parentheses: *acme*, *aegis*, *artery*, *colossal*, *dynamic*, *halcyon*, *plethora*, *titanic*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. an (excess) of this world's goods | 5. under the (protection) of the state |
| 2. (apex) of fame | 6. (gigantic) struggle |
| 3. (communication channel) of commerce | 7. (peaceful) days |
| 4. (huge) statue | 8. (forceful) suggestion |

CHAPTER III

Compound Words

LESSON 11

Compound Nouns: Noun or Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix. Prefixes.

Compound Nouns: Noun or Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix. Certain suffixes may be added to the base of Greek nouns or adjectives to form compound nouns.

1. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-ia** > English **-ia**, **-y**, forming abstract nouns.

GREEK NOUN OR ADJECTIVE	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
phóbos 'fear'	phob-	phobía	<i>phobia</i>
hēgemón 'leader'	hēgemon-	hēgemonía	<i>hegemony</i>
philósophos 'loving wisdom'	philosoph-	philosophía	<i>philosophy</i>

2. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-ismos**, **-isma** > English **-ism**, forming abstract nouns in which it denotes: (a) 'belief in, doctrine of, practice of (a system, theory, or art)'; (b) 'adherence to, attachment to (a system or ideal)'; (c) 'characteristic of, peculiarity of (a language).'

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
Héllēn 'a Greek'	Hellēn-	Hellēnismós	<i>Hellenism</i>

3. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-istēs** > English **-ist**, forming agent nouns in which it means: (a) 'one who practices a given art'; (b) 'one who professes, adheres to, or advocates to an extreme (doctrine, system, or cult),' commonly denoted by a corresponding noun in **-ism**.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
Héllēn 'a Greek'	Hellēn-	Hellēnistēs	<i>Hellenist</i>

-ismos and **-istēs** in their Latinized forms **-ismus** and **-ista** are already familiar from their frequent use in Latin, as we have already observed (Part One, page 91).

Prefixes. There are many prefixes in Greek which may be placed before nouns or adjectives to form compound nouns or adjectives. Thus *anodyne* is composed of the prefix **an-** 'without' and the noun **odýnē** 'pain.'

Suffixes may be attached to such compounds. Thus *anarchy* is composed of the prefix **an-** 'without'; **arch-**, base of the noun **archē** 'rule'; and **-ia**, abstract noun-forming suffix.

The following Greek prefixes appear frequently in English. Memorize all forms and meanings. Write out each one in Greek characters.

BASIC FORM	BEFORE VOWELS	MEANING	ENGLISH EXAMPLE
amphi-	amph-	'both,' 'of both kinds,' 'on both sides,' 'around'	<i>amphitheater</i>
a-	an-	'not,' 'without'	<i>anarchy</i>
ana-	an-	'up,' 'upward,' 'backward,' 'again,' 'anew,' 'greatly,' 'excessively'	<i>anabasis</i>
anti-	ant-	'opposite,' 'against,' 'rivaling,' 'in exchange'	<i>antipodes</i>

VOCABULARY

botánē 'plant'
lógos 'word,' 'speech,' 'reason'
morphē 'form'

ónoma, onómatos (cnym- or onomat-)
'name'
stratēgós 'general'
theós 'god'

EXERCISES

1. What Latin prefixes are, in general, equivalent in meaning to the Greek prefixes listed above? (See Part One, Lessons 25 to 27.)

2. Words for Special Study: *amphibious*, *anachronism*, *anomalous*, *anonymous*, *heroism*, *organism*, *tyranny*. Give examples of an *anachronism*; an *amphibious* animal.

3. Word Formation: 'without color,' 'without a head,' 'without blood.'

4. Synonyms and Antonyms: *anarchist*, *anarchy*, *anodyne*, *anomalous*, *antipode*, *despotism*, *hegemony*, *lawlessness*, *leadership*, *nihilist*, *opposite*, *regular*, *soothing*, *tyranny*.

5. Justify the current meanings of *amphitheater* and *antarctic* in the light of their etymological meanings.

6. What is the linguistic relationship between *anthem* and *antiphon*? Which was borrowed earlier?

7. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *antimony* and *antimony*.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Toxin 'disease-causing poison' and *antitoxin* 'serum neutralizing a toxin' are ultimately derived from the Greek plural noun *tóxa* 'bow and arrow.' Their meaning is accounted for in the light of the ancient practice of smearing arrows with poison. The English verb *intoxicate* is closely related to these words. It is derived from the perfect participle *intoxicātus* of the Medieval Latin *intoxicāre* 'to smear with poison,' a derivative of *tóxa* through *toxikón* 'poison.'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Thoreau's finespun theory of friendship, so devoid of any quality of flesh and blood, was a mere *anodyne* to lull his pains.
2. One of the strongest characteristics of the Renaissance was its *antinomianism*, its spirit of rebellion and revolt against the moral and religious ideas of the time.

B

1. In tale or history, your beggar is ever the just antipode to your king.
2. The possibility of an anonymous death on the battlefield could not be accepted by a self-conscious youth.
3. Since the retirement of the editor, the paper has been acephalous, with every employee following his own devices.
4. The 'dog's instinct' and 'automaton dog' in this age of psychology and science sound like strange anachronisms.

LESSON 12

Prefixes (*Cont'd*). Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*)

Prefixes (Cont'd). The following Greek prefixes appear frequently in English. Memorize all forms and meanings. Write out each one in Greek characters.

BASIC FORM	BEFORE VOWELS	MEANING	ENGLISH EXAMPLE
apo-	ap-	'from,' 'away from,' 'off,' 'quite'	<i>apocrypha</i>
dia-	di-	'through,' 'between,' 'apart,' 'across'	<i>diameter</i>
dys-		'ill,' 'bad,' 'hard,' 'difficult'	<i>dyspepsia</i>
en-, em-, el-		'in,' 'into'	<i>endemic</i>
eu-		'well,' 'good,' 'advantageous'	<i>euthanasia</i>
ek-	ex-	'out,' 'out of'	<i>exedra</i>
epi-	ep-	'upon,' 'at,' 'for (of time),' 'to,' 'on the ground of,' 'in addition to'	<i>epidermis</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds (Cont'd). The combining form *-mancy* 'divination by,' derived from the Greek noun *manteía* 'divination,' may be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
nekrós 'corpse'	nekr-	nekromanteía	<i>necromancy</i>

VOCABULARY

gē 'earth'
gōnía 'angle'

hēméra 'day'
hodós 'way,' 'road'

EXERCISES

1. What Latin prefixes are, in general, equivalent in meaning to the Greek prefixes listed above? (See Part One, Lessons 25 to 27.)
2. Nouns for Special Study: *apothecary*, *diathermy*, *encomium*, *encyclical*, *energy*. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *encomium*, *eulogy*, and *panegyric*.
3. Word Formation: 'upon a tomb,' 'out of center,' 'good sound,' 'divination by the earth,' 'rule by a single (person),' 'rule by two (persons),' 'rule by a few.' Coin, from Greek elements, English words meaning: 'divination by blood,' 'divination by flowers,' '(having) a bad tone,' 'the doctrine of a good god,' 'rule by the good,' 'rule by the bad.'
4. Synonyms and Antonyms: *concentric*, *conjunction*, *eccentric*, *endemic*, *energy*, *ephemeral*, *exotic*, *necromancy*, *transient*, *vigor*.
5. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between: *epitaph* and *cenotaph*; *epidemic*, *endemic*, and *pandemic*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Men seem to forget that all literature is *ephemeral*, and unwillingly entertain the supposition of its utter disappearance.
2. The story of Washington and the cherry tree, dear to our childhood recollections, is *apocryphal*, invented by a clergyman in an access of enthusiasm for the father of his country.
3. By the exercise of some occult *necromantic* art, he has recalled the spirits of the dead emperors, given them flesh and blood, and made them once more strut on the stage of life.

B

1. War to save men at the present day begins to look like an epidemic insanity.
2. Cholera is a disease endemic in India and epidemic in Europe.

LESSON 13

Prefixes (*Concl'd*)

The following Greek prefixes appear frequently in English. Memorize all forms and meanings. Write out each one in Greek characters.

BASIC FORM	BEFORE VOWELS	MEANING	ENGLISH EXAMPLE
hyper-		'over,' 'above,' 'beyond,' 'exceed- ingly,' 'excessive'	<i>hyper- sensitive</i>
hypo- kata-	hyp- kat-	'under,' 'below,' 'slightly' 'down,' 'away,' 'concerning,' 'mis-,' 'entirely'	<i>hypodermic catholic</i>
meta-	met-	'with,' 'after,' 'beyond,' 'over,' 'change'	<i>metaphysics</i>
para-	par-	'beside,' 'beyond,' 'contrary to,' 'irregular'	<i>paradox</i>
peri- pro-		'around,' 'about' 'before'	<i>peristyle proem</i>
syn-, sym-, syl-, sys-		'with,' 'along with,' 'together,' 'like'	<i>symmetry</i>

EXERCISES

1. What Latin prefixes are, in general, equivalent in meaning to the Greek prefixes listed above? (See Part One, Lessons 25 to 27.)

2. Words for Special Study: *hypochondriac, method, metonymy, parody, period, symphony*. Give three examples of *metonymy*. What is a "periodic sentence"?

3. Word Formation: 'beyond the North Wind,' 'contrary to opinion,' 'measure around,' 'beside one another.'

4. Synonyms and Antonyms: *apparatus*, *caricature*, *discord*, *harmony*, *method*, *mode*, *paraphernalia*, *parasite*, *parody*, *sycophant*, *symphony*.

5. What Greek-derived word is virtually synonymous, element for element, with the Latin-derived *subcutaneous*? Determine the etymology and current meaning of the hybrids *compatriot* and *concentric*. Re-form them, using Greek elements only. What is the antonym of *concentric*?

6. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *antonym*, *homonym*, *pseudonym*, and *synonym*. Give examples of each.

7. Justify the current meanings of *parasite*, *paraphernalia*, and *parish*, in the light of their etymological meanings. What Greek-derived adjective means, etymologically, 'of a parish'?

8. Translate the expression *ex cathedrā*. Determine its pronunciation and current meaning, and the part of speech to which it is equivalent in English. Use it in a sentence that clearly illustrates its correct meaning and application.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Kathédra 'seat' has had an interesting history in English. With the Latin suffix *-ālis*, it yielded *cathedral*. In Old French, **kathédra** became *chaïere* (Modern French *chaire*), from which we derived the familiar noun *chair*. A variant French pronunciation of *chaire* was *chaise*, which English borrowed without change. In the seventeenth century, the *s* of *chaise*, though an integral part of the word, was taken to be a plural ending, and a theoretical singular *shay* was accordingly formed.

The meaning of *metaphysics* has an unexpectedly simple history. In Aristotle's manuscripts, the works concerning 'nature' (**physiká**) were followed immediately by the works dealing with abstract philosophy. Consequently, the latter were called 'after (**meta-**) the physics (**physiká**).'

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Every view expressed in the book is partial, *parochial*, not raised above the horizon.

2. The *paradox* they set out with was that all things are by nature equally fit subjects for poetry.

B

1. To equip a dull, respectable person with wings would be to make a parody of an angel.

2. Materialism is not a system of metaphysics; it is a speculation in chemistry and physiology.

3. In flowers, the old gardener's taste was old-fashioned and catholic.

LESSON 14

Compound Nouns: Noun or Adjective Base Plus Noun-Forming Suffix (*Concl'd*)

In addition to the three suffixes mentioned in Lesson 11, there are five others which may be attached to noun or adjective bases to form compound nouns.

4. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-iskos** > English *-isk*, forming diminutive nouns.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
astēr 'star'	aster-	asterískos	<i>asterisk</i>

5. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-ion** > English *-ium*, forming diminutive nouns.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
géranos 'crane'	geran-	geránion	<i>geranium</i>

However, in many nouns formed with **-ion**, the diminutive meaning does not appear.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
Pallás 'Pallas' (an epithet of Athena)	Pallad-	Palládion	<i>palladium</i>

6. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-eion**, **-aion** > English *-eum* 'place for.'

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
Moúsa 'Muse'	Mous-	Mousefon	<i>museum</i>
Athēnē 'goddess of wisdom'	Athēn-	Athēnaion	<i>athenaeum</i>

7. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-itis** > English **-itis** 'inflammation of.'

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
árthron 'joint'	arthr-	arthrítis	<i>arthritis</i>

8. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-itēs** > English **-ite** 'one having to do with,' 'inhabitant of,' 'descendant of'; also used to form names of chemicals, minerals, etc.

GREEK NOUN OR ADJECTIVE	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
erēmos 'solitary'	erēm-	erēmítēs	<i>eremite</i>
dýnamis 'force'	dynam-	*dynamitēs	<i>dynamite</i>

EXERCISES

1. Nouns for Special Study: *cenobite*, *cosmopolite*, *podium*, *proscenium*, *pyrites*, *symposium*. What is a "proscenium box"?

2. Word Formation: 'place for Mausolus,' 'place for a gigantic statue,' 'inflammation of the stomach,' 'inflammation of the nerves,' 'inflammation of the throat,' 'descendant of Adam,' 'descendant of Ham,' 'descendant of Shem.' Coin from Greek elements English words meaning: 'place for leisure,' 'little measure,' 'place for a corpse,' 'little flower,' 'inflammation of the foot.'

3. Justify the current meanings of *canopy* and *bacterium* in the light of their etymological meanings.

4. Determine the etymology, pronunciation, and current meaning of *sybarite* and *solecism*. From the point of view of their ultimate origin, what have these nouns in common?

5. What is the linguistic relationship between *eremite* and *hermit*? Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *hermitic* and *hermetic*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. If a man designs to construct a house, it behooves him to exercise a little Yankee shrewdness, lest, after all, he find himself in a splendid *mausoleum* fit only to house the dead.

2. Investigations have shown that the prisoner in his private life was something of a *sybarite*—luxurious and pleasure-loving.

3. The wild goose is more of a *cosmopolite* than we; he breaks his fast in Canada, takes luncheon in Ohio, and plumes himself for the night in a southern bayou.

4. In my youth I was a great solitary, living the life of an *eremite* amidst the bustle and din of a great city.

B

1. His role in life was like that of a dancing bear, which is held to commit a solecism every time it settles on the four legs nature gave it.

2. We have learned by sad experience that the gold standard is no commercial palladium.

LESSON 15

Compound Adjectives and Verbs. Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*)

Compound Adjectives. There are two suffixes which are commonly attached to noun or adjective bases to form compound adjectives.

1. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-ikos** > English *-ic* 'of,' 'pertaining to,' 'belonging to,' 'fit for.'

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
mágos 'Persian priest,' 'sorcerer'	mag-	magikós	magic

This suffix needs no further explanation. In its Latinized form *-icus*, it is already familiar from its frequent use in Latin, as we have already observed (Part One, page 76).

-ikē, feminine form of this suffix, appears in the names of certain arts and sciences. Originally, these names were adjectives modifying the feminine noun **téchnē** 'art' or **epistémē** 'knowledge,' which later was omitted.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
lógos 'word,' 'speech,' 'reason'	log-	logiké (téchnē)	logic

Greek nouns may be formed with **-ika** 'things pertaining to,' neuter plural of this suffix. The English plural *-s* replaces the **-a** of the Greek **-ika**.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
phýsis 'nature'	phys-	physiká	<i>physics</i>

2. Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-oeidēs**
> English *-oid* 'like,' 'resembling.'

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
sphaíra 'ball'	sphair-	sphairoeidēs	<i>spheroid</i>

Compound Verbs. Greek has many suffixes which may be attached to noun or adjective bases to form compound verbs. Only one of these, however, appears consistently in English.

Noun or adjective base plus the Greek suffix **-izō** > English *-ize*, 'to make into or like,' 'to subject to,' 'to put into conformity with.'

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND VERB	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
mēchanē 'machine'	mēchan-	*mēchanizō	<i>mechanize</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds (Cont'd). The combining forms *-cracy* 'rule by' and *-crat* 'supporter of, member of, the rule by' derived from the Greek combining forms **-kratía** and **-kratēs** (from **krátos** 'power'), respectively, may be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
dēmos 'people'	dēm-	dēmokratía *dēmokratēs	<i>democracy</i> <i>democrat</i>

VOCABULARY

archaios 'old'
chrónos 'time'
éthnos 'nation'

éthos 'custom,' 'character,' 'nature'
tópos 'place'

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *autocracy*, *exotic*,¹ *esoteric*, *mathematics*, *neurasthenic*, *pyrotechnics*, *rhetoric*, *stigmatize*, *synchronize*, *tabloid*, *technique*, *typhoid*. Give the exact form of the Greek compounds from which *economics*, *typhoid*, and *rhetoric* are derived. What is a “*rhetorical question*”?

2. Word Formation: ‘supporter of the rule by wealth,’ ‘mob rule,’ ‘to make into a lion,’ ‘starlike,’ ‘manlike,’ ‘pertaining to dogs,’ ‘(art) of the Muses,’ ‘pertaining to Pan,’ ‘of the Spartans,’ ‘of the porch.’

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *autocracy*, *brand*, *bravery*, *cynical*, *despotism*, *esoteric*, *fear*, *fireworks*, *misanthropic*, *panic*, *passive*, *philanthropic*, *pyrotechnics*, *recondite*, *stigmatize*, *stoic*.

4. What Greek-derived words are virtually synonymous, element for element, with the Latin-derived words *natural*, *morals*, *verbal*, and *temporal*? Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each.

5. In Book VIII of his *Republic*, Plato speaks of the “rule by the best” and the “rule by honor.” What are the Greek words that he uses? Write them out in Greek characters. What are the corresponding English loan words?

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

The meeting of the City Fathers was marked by a brilliant display of verbal *pyrotechnics*. Bombs burst and sparks flew when a proposal was made to create jobs for deserving henchmen by additional taxation.

B

1. Between the lowest forms of mankind and the highest kind of anthropoid lies a wide intermediate zone, which we bridge at the present day by hypothetical links.

2. The fleet was ordered to the Pacific in order to synchronize its maneuvers with the government’s protest against hostile Japanese moves.

¹ Contains an adverbial base.

3. That a nation has a vociferous and active group of priest-baiters is no adequate reason to stigmatize a whole people.

4. Your letters, except those on a given subject, are exceedingly laconic and neither answer my desires nor the purpose of the letters.

LESSON 16

Review

A. The words in the following groups contain the bases of Greek nouns with which you are familiar. Determine the etymology, pronunciation, and current meaning of each of these words. Wherever possible, show how the basic meaning of the one Greek noun from which each group is derived appears in each word therein.

1. *Anachronism, chronic, chronicle, synchronous.*
2. *Apogee, geography, geology, geomancy, geometry, geophysics, perigee.*
3. *Epiglottis, gloss, glossary, glottal, monoglot, polyglot.*
4. *Cacophonous, cacophony, euphonious, euphony, homophone, megaphone, microphone, symphonic, symphony, telephone, xylophone.*
5. *Bicycle, cycle, cyclic, cyclist, cyclone, cyclonic, Cyclopean, cyclopedia, cyclopedist, Cyclops, encyclopedia, kilocycle, megacycle, tricycle.*
6. *Anonymous, antonym, homonym, metonymy, pseudonym, synonym.*

B. Determine the etymology, pronunciation, and meaning in its context of each word in the following sentences belonging to the classes of words studied in this and the previous chapter:

1. Scientists have perfected a new weapon in the treatment of cancer—a flexible gastrometer, which enables the physician to look directly into the stomach.

2. To say that a composer created cacophonous harmonies would seem to be a contradiction, but the disharmonies were on the surface only.

3. Of all radio ephemera, none is more ephemeral than the studio book critic.

4. Somewhere in that pale phantasmagoria of cliffs and clouds our haven lay concealed.

5. Epicurus, the Herbert Spencer of antiquity, was in his natural philosophy an encyclopedia of secondhand knowledge.

6. The poor vindictive creature was a philocalist: he had a singular love for flowers and beautiful women.

7. We wondered by what alchemy the cold earth of clods could be transmuted into color so rich and odor so touchingly sweet.

8. The classification of the stages in the evolution of the city into eopolis, polis, metropolis, megapolis, tyrannopolis, and nekropolis seems a little despondent.

9. Shakespeare's tragedies may be made for a single star, but his comedies are made for a galaxy of constellations.

10. In Greece, there was a grave of Zeus. The euhe-merists made this tomb a proof that Zeus was a deified man.

11. That which torments a soul gives Mephistopheles a sardonic satisfaction.

12. As night came on, dark figures could be seen assembling under the shadow of the amphitheater—a little group of heroes whose names have been forgotten but whose titanic struggles against despotism have won them the encomiums of all freedom-loving peoples.

13. The conspirators planned to synchronize the revolt of the military with an uprising of the people, to murder the tyrant and his minions, and to fire the city, hoping thereby

to raise up a democratic order from the ashes of the holocaust.

14. When rumors of the conclave reached the aristocrats, fear became epidemic and an exodus from the city started; but it was too late, for most of them were murdered in their tracks.

15. For apostates from the cause and for those cravens who refused to join the conspiracy, the death penalty was decreed and a stigma placed even on their innocent children.

C. From the following list of words, select a synonym or synonymous expression for each word or expression given below in parentheses: *apogee*, *chimerical*, *cremite*, *ex cathedra*, *gigantic*, *hypodermic*, *Lethean*, *pantomime*, *siren*.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. (subcutaneous) injection | 6. (huge) monster |
| 2. with words and (dumb show) | 7. (oblivion-inducing) draught |
| 3. (authoritative) statement | 8. (highest point) of perfection |
| 4. solitary (recluse) | 9. alluring (flirt) |
| 5. (visionary) dreams | |

CHAPTER IV

Greek Verbs

LESSON 17

Verb Bases. Compound Verbs

Verb Bases. Many English adjectives and nouns come from Greek verbal derivatives. To form these verbal derivatives, it is necessary to know how to find the base of a Greek verb.

1. The first person singular present indicative is the form under which Greek verbs are usually listed in the dictionaries. In the case of active verbs, this ends in **-ō** or **-mi**; of deponent verbs, in **-omai**. The base is normally found by dropping these endings.

GREEK VERB	BASE	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE CONTAINING BASE
tribō 'I rub'	trib-	<i>diatribe</i>
phēmí 'I speak'	phē-	<i>prophet</i>
idiōmai 'I make my own'	idiō-	<i>idiom</i>

2. Very often an **-e-** within the verb is changed to **-o-**.

GREEK VERB	BASE	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE CONTAINING BASE
pémpō 'I send'	pomp-	<i>pomp</i>
phérō 'I bear'	phor-	<i>metaphor</i>

3. An **-a-** preceding the ending changes to **-ē-**; a **-z-**, to **-s-**.

GREEK VERB	BASE	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE CONTAINING BASE
komáō 'I wear long hair'	komē-	comet
klýzō 'I wash'	klýs-	cataclysm

4. There are many exceptions to the above rules, since the verb base is often disguised through phonetic changes and since many Greek verbs have more than one base. In cases of this sort, the base or bases will be indicated in parentheses next to the verb and must be learned along with it—e.g.:

GREEK VERB	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE CONTAINING BASE
lambánō (lēp- or lēm-) 'I take'	epilepsy, dilemma
keránnymi (kra-) 'I mix'	crater

Note: Some dictionaries list Greek verbs by their present infinitives. The first person singular present indicative can be determined with the help of the following table. Column I lists the various present infinitive endings and Column II the corresponding first person singular present indicative endings.

I	II	EXAMPLE		BASE
ACTIVE VERBS				
-ein	-ō	pémp-ein 'to send'	pémp-ō 'I send'	pomp-
-ein	-eō	kin-ein 'to move'	kin-éō 'I move'	kinē-
-an	-aō	tim-án 'to honor'	tim-áō 'I honor'	timē-
-oun	-oō	dēl-oún 'to manifest'	dēl-ōō 'I manifest'	dēlō-
-nai	-mi	keranný-nai 'to mix'	keránnymi 'I mix'	kra-
DEPONENT VERBS				
-esthai	-omai	sképt-esthai 'to watch'	sképt-omai 'I watch'	skep- or skop-
-eisthai	-eomai	mim-eisthai 'to imitate'	mim-éomai 'I imitate'	mimē-
-asthai	-aomai	plan-ásthai 'to wander'	plan-áomai 'I wander'	planē-
-ousthai	-oomai	idi-ouísthai 'to make one's own'	idi-óomai 'I make my own'	idiō-

Compound Verbs. The prefixes studied in the previous chapter may also be attached to verb bases. Thus *diatribe* is derived from **diatribō** 'I rub away (time),' 'I waste time,' composed of the prefix **dia-** 'through,' 'away' and the verb **tribō** 'I rub.'

VOCABULARY

ágō (agog-) 'lead'	légō (log- or lek-) 'speak,' 'say,' 'gather'
árchō 'rule,' 'lead'	phérō (pher- or phor-) 'bear,' 'carry'
bállō (ball-, bol- or blē-) 'throw'	sképtomai (skep- or skop-) 'watch'
dídōmi (do-) 'give'	stéllō (stol-) 'send'

Memorize each verb with its base (or bases) and meaning. Using the prefixes you have studied, form a compound Greek verb from each. Translate each verb thus formed.

EXERCISES

1. Determine the base of each of the following Greek verbs: **lýō** 'loosen'; **tréchō** 'run'; **miméomai** 'imitate'; **trépō** 'turn'; **árchō** 'rule,' 'lead'; **koimáō** 'put to sleep'; **baptízō** 'dip in water.'

2. Form compound Greek verbs meaning: 'know before,' 'teach to,' 'see together,' 'take away from,' 'seize before,' 'write below,' 'write against,' 'walk around,' 'go back.' Write out each verb in Greek characters.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

From the verb **damáō** 'tame,' the Greeks had formed the word **adámas**, **adámantos**, literally 'untamable,' which they used of the hardest metal—probably steel. The word passed through Latin and Old French and entered English in the form *adamant*, with its meaning generalized to include anything impenetrably hard. The archaic meaning of 'loadstone' is due to a confusion in Medieval Latin with Latin *adamāns*, *adamantis* 'having an attraction for.' A Late Latin accusative form *diamantem* is responsible for the doublet *diamond*, a stone noted for its hardness.

LESSON 18

Greek Verbs in English. Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*)

Greek Verbs in English. Greek nouns may be formed by attaching the endings **-a**, **-ē** (First Declension), **-os**, or **-on** (Second Declension) to verb bases. Nouns thus formed have been borrowed by English in the same ways as the Greek First- and Second-Declension nouns discussed in Lessons 1 to 3.

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
metaphérō 'transfer'	metaphor-	metaphorá 'trans- ferring'	<i>metaphor</i>
pémpō 'send'	pomp-	pompé 'sending,' 'procession'	<i>pomp</i>
epistéllō 'send to'	epistol-	epistolé 'sending to,' 'letter'	<i>epistle</i>
trépō 'turn'	trop-	trópos 'turning'	<i>trope</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds (Cont'd). The following combining forms, derived from Greek verb bases, may be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds.

GREEK VERB	COMBINING FORM	ENGLISH EXAMPLE
légō 'speak,' 'say,' 'gather'	-logia > <i>-logy</i> 'speaking,' 'study of,' 'belief in,' 'sci- ence of,' 'collection of'	<i>biology</i>
témnō 'cut'	-tomia > <i>-tomy</i> 'cutting,' 'cutting of'	<i>neurotomy</i>

EXERCISES

1. Analyze the following nouns according to the pattern given below, determining the pronunciation and current meaning of each: *apostle*, *apostrophe*, *catastrophe*, *epitome*, *pathos*, *prologue*, *prototype*,¹ *truck*.

ENGLISH LOAN WORD	GREEK NOUN	GREEK PREFIX (if any)	GREEK VERB
<i>epistle</i>	epistolē 'sending to,' 'letter'	epi- 'to'	stállō 'send'

2. Using the Greek prefixes and suffixes studied in the previous chapter, form seven English derivatives from the Greek verb **ballō** (**ball-**, **bol-** or **blē-**) 'throw,' according to the following pattern:

GREEK VERB	GREEK COM- POUND VERB	GREEK COM- POUND NOUN	GREEK SUFFIX (if any)	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
stállō 'send'	epistállō 'send to'	epistolē 'sending to,' 'letter'		<i>epistle</i>

3. Word Formation: 'child-leader,' 'people-leader,' 'cutting up,' 'sun-turning,' 'sacred carving,' 'sign bearer,' 'study of the soul,' 'study of rocks,' 'study of God,' 'collection of flowers (of verse),' 'study of (word) roots.'

4. Synonyms and Antonyms: *archetype*, *catastrophe*, *compendium*, *disaster*, *eclogue*, *enlargement*, *epitome*, *idyll*, *ostentation*, *palaver*, *parley*, *pomp*, *prototype*, *simplicity*.

5. What Greek-derived words are synonymous, element for element, with the Latin-derived words *Lucifer* and *carnivorous*?

6. Are the following words in any way etymologically related: *eclogue* and *dialogue*; *epistle* and *apostle*; "truck farm" and "delivery truck"? Give reasons for your answers.

7. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *astronomy* and *astrology*.

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

Parabolē 'comparison,' the noun formed from **parabállō** 'place side by side,' is the ultimate source of a large group of English

¹ See *týptō* in the General Vocabulary.

words. Derived from it, with only a slight change in form and meaning, are the doublets *parabola* and *parable*. Its other derivatives, however, reveal numerous changes introduced by Latin, Old French, and even Hebrew.

There existed in Hebrew a noun *pāschāl* 'comparison,' which was translated in Greek by *parabolé*. However, since *pāschāl* also meant 'word,' this was added to *parabolé* as a second meaning. *Parabolé* was subsequently borrowed by Latin in this second sense in the form *parabola*, and a verb *parabolāre* 'to talk' was coined to accompany it. These two words soon drove out the Classical Latin words *verbum* 'word' and *loquī* 'to talk,' and yielded the common words for 'talk' in all the Romance languages. *Parabola* is, consequently, the ultimate source of the Portuguese *palavra* 'word,' from which our *palaver* is derived, and of the French *parole* 'word.' English *parole* is a clipped form of *parole d'honneur*. Alongside *parabolāre* there existed in Latin the modified form *parlāre*, from the perfect participle of which, in Medieval Latin, the noun *parlātōrium* 'place for speaking' was formed. This has yielded the familiar English noun *parlor*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Every object in the terrestrial world is an *analogue*, a *symbol* or counterpart of some higher reality in the starry heavens.
2. According to the testimony of *ornithologists*, eaglets nurtured in dovecots, as sometimes happens when the economy of nature goes awry, usually make a meal of their foster parents.
3. Lucretius adopts Epicureanism, the most radical and correct of those *cosmological* systems which the genius of early Greece devised to explain the physical universe.
4. The speaker, turning away from his audience, delivered a five-minute *apostrophe* to Peace.
5. The politician, taking advantage of the social unrest created by the depression, used all the tricks of the unscrupulous *demagogue* to further his own interest with the masses.

B

1. The science of anthropology can speak with some confidence on many questions of mythology.

2. It was no hyperbole when I ventured to compare the change in my condition to a passing into another world.

3. It was not until the end of the seventeenth century that the names of Amis and Amile were finally excluded from the martyrology.

4. The Prime Minister represents the epitome of all the aspirations after peace on the part of all the peoples of the world.

5. To many people, the Declaration of Independence is the prototype of all similar declarations of peoples seeking to throw off the yoke of foreign oppressors.

LESSON 19

Compound Nouns Formed From Verbs. Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*)

Compound Nouns Formed From Verbs. Certain suffixes may be attached to Greek verb bases to form compound nouns.

1. Verb base plus the Greek suffix **-tēs** > English *-tes*, *-t*, *-te*, forming agent nouns in which it denotes 'one who' or 'that which' performs the action indicated in the base.

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
diabainō 'go through'	diabē-	diabētēs	<i>diabetes</i>
planáomai 'wander'	planē-	planētēs	<i>planet</i>
athléō 'contend for a prize'	athlē-	athlētēs	<i>athlete</i>
baptízō 'dip in water'	baptis-	baptistēs	<i>baptist</i>
gymnázō 'exercise naked'	gymnas-	gymnastēs	<i>gymnast</i>

2. Verb base plus the Greek suffix **-tēr** > English *-ter*, forming agent nouns.

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
charássō 'engrave'	charak-	charaktēr	<i>character</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds (*Cont'd*). The combining form *-pathy* 'disease of,' 'treatment of or by,' derived from

-patheia, the Greek combining form of **páschō** (**path-** or **pathē-**) 'suffer,' may be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
psychḗ 'soul,' 'mind'	psych-	* psychopatheia	<i>psychopathy</i>

The combining form **-scope** 'instrument for observing,' derived from **-skopos**, the Greek combining form of **skēptomai** (**skep-** or **skop-**) 'watch,' may also be attached to noun bases to form English multiple-base compounds.

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
stéthos 'breast,' 'chest'	stēth-	* stēthoskopos	<i>stethoscope</i>

VOCABULARY

aisthánomai (aisthē-) 'feel,' 'perceive'	'experience'
hístēmi (sta-) 'set,' 'stand'	phēmí 'speak,' 'say'
páschō (path- or pathē-) 'suffer,' 'feel,'	

EXERCISES

1. Analyze the following words according to the pattern given below, determining the pronunciation and current meaning of each: *anchorite, antipathy, comet,*¹ *iconoclast, protagonist.*

ENGLISH LOAN WORD	GREEK COM- POUND NOUN	GREEK VERB	GREEK PREFIX, SUFFIX, OR NOUN BASE (if any)
<i>planet</i>	planētēs 'wanderer'	planáomai 'wander'	-tēs 'that which'

2. Word Formation: 'maker,' 'one who acts wisely,' 'that which (is used for) mixing,' 'one who contends against,' 'one who brings good news,' 'treatment of the bones,' 'treatment by water,' 'in-

¹ See **komáō** in the General Vocabulary.

strument for observing (from) afar,' 'instrument for observing small (things),' 'instrument for observing around.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *antagonist, character, disposition, dissembler, fallacy, hypocrite, opponent, protagonist, sophistry.*

4. Determine the etymology of *hypocrite, horoscope, and scholastic*. Justify the current meaning of each in the light of its etymological meaning. Distinguish between *hypocritical* and *hypercritical*.

5. What is the semantic relationship between *evangel, gospel, and good tidings?*

6. Explain the title of Milton's poem, *Sampson Agonistes*.

7. Compare the etymological meaning of *athlete* with that of *prizefighter*.

8. What Greek-derived noun is synonymous, element for element, with the Latin-derived *compassion?*

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

The noun *tróktēs*, literally 'gnawer,' from *trógō* (*trók-*) 'gnaw,' was used in Greek of a sea fish with sharp teeth. It was borrowed by Latin in the form *tructa*, which finally yielded English *trout*. This is only one of several names of common fish stemming ultimately from the Greek. *Perch* is derived from Greek *pérkē*. Greek *thýnnos* has yielded *tunny*, which is not as familiar to Americans as the related *tuna*, a form showing Spanish influence. *Dolphin* is from Greek *delphís*. *Porphýra* 'purple fish,' noted in ancient times for the purple dye made from it, has yielded the words *purple* and *porphyry*.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. Dr. John Brown, wholly out of sympathy with the fad of treating diseases by administering large doses of water, remarked: "*Hydrotherapy* sees and speaks some truth, but it is as in its sleep or with one eye shut and one leg gone."

2. He doubles like a serpent, changes and flashes like a shaken *kaleidoscope*.

3. The editor of the magazine is an unblushing *iconoclast*; he attacks shams and demolishes accepted opinions.

4. Chamberlain was the *protagonist* in the movement to appease the dictator nations, for the French were unable to assume leadership.

B

1. The gossip of the village, taken in homeopathic doses, was as refreshing as the rustle of leaves and the peeping of frogs.

2. My antagonist in the struggle for control of the corporation used all the trickeries he could command to defeat me.

3. The illustrations of William Blake go off at a tangent, burst through their time, and catapult from the eighteenth century into the heart of the modern.

LESSON 20

Compound Nouns Formed From Verbs (*Cont'd*)

In addition to the two suffixes discussed in the previous lesson, the following suffixes may also be attached to verb bases to form compound nouns.

3. Verb base plus the Greek suffix **-tron** > English **-ter** 'place for,' 'means,' 'instrument for.'

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
sképtō 'support'	skēp-	sképtron	<i>scepter</i>

4. Verb base plus the Greek suffix **-tērion** > English **-tery** 'place for,' 'means,' 'instrument for.'

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
koimáō 'put to sleep'	koimē-	koimētērion	<i>cemetery</i>

5. Verb Base plus the Greek suffix **-sis** > English **-sis**, **-se**, **-sy**, forming abstract nouns in which it denotes 'act of,' 'state of,' 'result of.'

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
títhēmi 'place'	the-	thésis	<i>thesis</i>
dídōmi 'give'	do-	dósis	<i>dose</i>
existēmi 'put out of place', 'derange'	eksta-	ékstasis	<i>ecstasy</i>

VOCABULARY

hairéomai 'choose'
horáō (hora- or op-) 'see'
lambánō (lēp- or lēm-) 'take'

lýō 'loosen'
tássō (tak-) 'arrange'

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *anesthesia, apostasy, cautery, criterion, diagnosis, eclipse, ellipse, epilepsy, taxidermy, theater*. (Follow the pattern given in Lesson 19, Question 1.)

2. Using Greek prefixes and suffixes, form four English derivatives from the Greek verb *títhēmi* (the-) 'place,' according to the following pattern:

GREEK COMPOUND VERB	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
<i>syntíthēmi</i> 'place together'	<i>sýnthesis</i> 'act of,' or 'result of placing together'	<i>synthesis</i>

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *analysis, criterion, eccentricity, ecstasy, idiosyncrasy, rapture, standard, synthesis, transport*.

4. What Greek-derived words are synonymous, element for element, with the following Latin-derived words: *circumlocution, conspectus, reformation, resolution, and supposition*? Determine the pronunciation and current meaning of each.

5. Analyze the names *Genesis* and *Ecclesiastes*.

6. Justify the current meaning of *idiosyncrasy* in the light of its etymological meaning.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The Italian warrior is the *antithesis* of the Russian; the Italian is as volatile as the Russian is stolid.

2. There is not a man but has his pulses shaken when Pan trolls a stave of *ecstasy* and sets the world asinging.

3. From his letters and diary, it was possible for us to make a *synthesis* of the artist's character and to build up, piece by piece, his philosophy of life.

4. The little country is suffering from a species of *catalepsy*, for the government has been forced by the conqueror to assume a rigid system which holds to any position set by the invaders.

5. The father, a musician of considerable talent, was *eclipsed* by his more gifted son, and the old man was content to pass his remaining years in the shadow of his son's genius.

B

1. The military machine may prove itself to be the nemesis of Europe.
2. Democracy is something from which I shrink; it seems to signify nothing less than national apostasy.
3. The Greek philosopher supposes that, at the genesis of the world, the elements of heat and cold parted.
4. I considered the hullabaloo about gangsters as evidence of national paresis.
5. A live hypothesis is one which appears as a real possibility to him to whom it is proposed.
6. On winter nights, I heard such sounds as the frozen earth would yield if struck with a suitable plectrum.

LESSON 21

Compound Nouns Formed From Verbs (*Concl'd*). Multiple-Base Compounds (*Concl'd*)

Compound Nouns Formed From Verbs (Concl'd). In addition to the five suffixes discussed in the two previous lessons, the following suffixes may also be attached to verb bases to form compound nouns.

6. Verb base plus the Greek suffix **-mos** > English **-m**, forming abstract nouns in which it denotes 'state of,' 'act of,' 'result of the act of.'

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
pleonázō 'be more than enough,' 'abound'	pleonas-	pleonasmós	<i>pleonasm</i>

7. Verb base plus the Greek suffix **-ma**¹ > English **-ma**, **-m**, **-me** 'result of.'

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND NOUN	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
stízō 'brand'	stig-	stíγμα	<i>stigma</i>
gráphō 'write'	gram-	gráμμα	<i>gram</i>
títhēmi 'place'	the-	théma	<i>theme</i>

Multiple-Base Compounds (Concl'd). Three combining forms derived from the verb **gráphō** 'write' may be attached to noun and adjective bases to form English multiple-base compounds, as follows:

¹ For the base of Greek nouns so formed, see Lesson 6.

-*graphos* > -*graph* 'writing,' 'writer,' 'instrument for recording.'

-*graphia* > -*graphy* 'writing,' 'art of writing or describing,' 'science of describing.'

-*gramma* > -*gram* 'thing written or drawn.'

GREEK NOUN	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
phōnē	phōn-	* phōnographos	<i>phonograph</i>
		* phōnographia	<i>phonography</i>
		* phōnogramma	<i>phonogram</i>

VOCABULARY

dráō (dra- or dras-) 'do,' 'act'

gráphō (graph- or gram-) 'write'

kinéō 'set in motion,' 'move'

títhēmi (the-) 'place'

EXERCISES

1. Determine the elements contained in the three Greek combining forms of **gráphō** listed above.

2. Nouns for Special Study: *autobiography*, *cataclysm*, *dilemma*, *dogma*, *emblem*, *enthusiasm*, *pantograph*, *paroxysm*, *phantasm*, *protoplasm*, *spasm*, *stenography*, *symptom*. (Follow the pattern given in Lesson 19, Question 1.)

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *brand*, *cataclysm*, *convulsion*, *deluge*, *dilemma*, *doctrine*, *dogma*, *enthusiasm*, *fanaticism*, *indifference*, *phantasm*, *phantom*, *quandary*, *spasm*, *stigma*.

4. State which words in the following list are linguistically related and what the nature of the relationship is: *autopsy*, *blaspheme*, *economy*, *episode*, *hyperbole*, *methodical*, *nemesis*, *panorama*, *problem*, *prophet*.

5. From the point of view of etymology, criticize the expressions "yawning *chasm*"¹ and "biting *sarcasm*."

6. Using Greek and Latin prefixes and suffixes, form ten English derivatives of the Greek noun **grámma**, **grámmatos**.

7. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *pleonasm*, *tautology*, and *redundance*.

¹ See **cháskō** in the General Vocabulary.

8. From the point of view of formation, criticize the noun *gramophone*.

9. Re-form the hybrid *multigraph*, using Greek elements only.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. When I take Burns from his right surroundings and try to make him appear on paper, he looks unreal and *phantasmal*.

2. There is no better way to stop the rising of sects and *schisms* among peoples than to reform the abuses that foster such divisions.

3. Another world war will cause a *cataclysm*, a social and political upheaval the like of which the world has never seen.

4. A sudden *paroxysm* of fear seized the savage when he saw an aeroplane for the first time.

B

1. In any attempt to be fair to Burns, I was on the horns of a dilemma; and between the horns, I squeezed myself with perhaps some loss to the substance of my paper.

2. Although since Huber's time considerable additions have been made to the micrography of bees, not a single one of his principal statements has been disproved.

3. Mephistopheles observes all the rules about signing contracts in blood, knocking thrice, and respecting pentagrams.

4. The death of the duchess was followed in the duke by one of those paroxysms of religious feeling which in him were constitutional.

5. To the Japanese brain, an ideograph is a vivid picture.

6. Dogmas are mere blind struggles to express the inexpressible.

7. The ignorant and the thoughtless will continue to class the English character under the phlegmatic temperament.

8. The genuine child of impulse, the frigid philosopher of prudence—the phlegm of my cousin's doctrine is invariably at war with his temperament, which is high sanguine.

LESSON 22

Compound Adjectives Formed From Verbs. Verbal Adjectives

Compound Adjectives Formed From Verbs. Greek has many suffixes that may be attached to verb bases to form compound adjectives. Only one of these, however, appears consistently in English.

Verb base plus the Greek suffix **-tikos** > English *-tic* 'fit for,' 'able to,' 'inclined to,' 'pertaining to,' etc.

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK COMPOUND ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
phōnéō 'speak'	phōnē-	phōnētikós	phonetic

Verbal Adjectives. The Greek suffix **-tos** (neuter **-ton**) may be attached to Greek verb bases to form verbal adjectives which are equivalent in meaning to Latin perfect passive participles. Since adjectives thus formed were also used as nouns in Greek, their English derivatives are very often nouns. The suffix is sometimes borrowed without change, while sometimes it is Anglicized.

GREEK VERB	BASE	GREEK VERBAL ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH LOAN WORD
skállō 'dry up'	skele-	skeletón 'dried up'	skeleton
antídídōmi 'give against'	antido-	antídoton 'given against'	antidote

EXERCISES

1. Words for Special Study: *acrobat, analytic, anecdote, drastic, eclectic.*

2. (a) General Vocabulary Study: Form eight English adjectives by attaching the suffix *-tic* to the bases of appropriate verbs.

(b) Word Formation: 'entire(ly)-burnt,' 'placed upon,' 'new-grown,' 'fit for moulding,' 'inclined to see together,' 'fit for beautifying.'

3. Synonyms and Antonyms: *acrobat, analytic, anecdote, antidote, beautifying, cosmetic, didactic, gymnast, instructive, neophyte, remedy, story, synthetic, tyro, veteran.*

4. Give the exact form of the Greek adjective from which *tactics* is derived. Justify its current meaning in the light of its etymological meaning.

5. What is "*didactic* poetry"? Give an example of it. Distinguish it from "*epic* poetry" and "*lyric* poetry."

6. Distinguish etymologically and semantically between *aesthetic* and *ascetic*.

7. Re-form the hybrid *automobile* three times, using: (a) Greek elements only; (b) Latin elements only; and (c) English elements only.

8. What Greek-derived word is synonymous, element for element, with the Latin-derived *compositive*? Determine its pronunciation and current meaning.

9. What is the linguistic relationship between *ecstasy, static, and apostasy*?

SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

English has borrowed the Greek adjective **kryptós** 'hidden,' the verbal adjective of **krýptō** 'hide,' in the multiple-base compounds *cryptogram* 'a writing in cipher' and *cryptography* 'the act or art of writing in secret characters,' as well as in a few less familiar words. The feminine of this adjective, **kryptē**, used as a noun in Greek meaning 'vault,' 'hidden chamber' has yielded in English the doublets *crypt* 'an underground vault or chamber' and *grotto* 'a picturesque cave.' The latter has entered English through Italian. The curious painted work found on the walls of excavated grottoes was called by the Italians *grottesca*, whence our *grotesque*.

Ēnkaustos 'burnt in,' the verbal adjective of **enkaíō** 'burn in,'

was borrowed by English, with the addition of the suffix *-ic*, as the technical term *encaustic*. Its neuter, in the Latinized form *encaustum*, was used of the purple-red ink employed by Roman emperors for signing edicts. Hence the meaning of *ink*, a much more familiar derivative.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

A

1. The old lady I have in mind is a *caustic* speaker; the guilty cringe under her verbal lashings.

2. The President offered a mere *skeletal* arrangement of his proposals for the relief of the unemployed. He left it to his assistants to provide the flesh and blood.

3. Like the genius of the Japanese race, Shinto is *eclectic*: it has appropriated all forms of foreign thought that could modify its ethics.

4. Our family physician, though trained in the homeopathic school, was *eclectic* in actual practice, for he was willing to adopt the effective methods of any school.

5. It seems preposterous for an unfledged *neophyte* to tell an old hand at the game like myself how to write a novel.

B

1. From time to time, children at play glance at their elders, only to glean a hint for their own mimetic reproduction.

2. Does the deep-toned bell, which has shortened many a night of jangled nerves, render nothing but acoustic vibrations?

3. The plastic stress of nature is beginning to reassert itself; seeds swell, birds grow full.

4. There is no inevitable conflict between the ascetic and the aesthetic life, as the frescoes of Fra Angelico eloquently show.

5. The bombing of Shanghai was followed by one of the most terrifying holocausts the world has ever seen.

6. The reviewers were somewhat hypercritical in their treatment of the new play. Everywhere, to my seeming, they could have been fairer.

7. I have been reading one of those prognostic articles on inter-

national politics which forecast cataclysms that never come in the sequel.

8. A quicker eye, a more synthetic imagination, might grasp a larger subject with the same ease.

9. It is never wise to see a play with a newspaper reviewer, for, through training and experience, these gentry have become so hypercritical that they are likely to spoil an evening that may otherwise be enjoyable enough.

LESSON 23

Review

A. Determine the etymology, pronunciation, and current meaning of the following words:

1. *Epilogue, melodrama, music, program, prologue, scene, theater.*

2. *Apostrophe, colon, comma, hyphen, paragraph, parenthesis, period, semicolon.*

3. *Banjo, chord, cymbal, guitar, melody, meter, organ, rhythm, tone, tympanum.*

4. *Baptistry, cathedral, catholicism, diocese, ecclesiastic, eucharist, Episcopalian, Presbyterian.*

B. The words in **A** have been chosen from the fields of drama, grammar and composition, music, and religion. List fifteen Greek-derived words from the fields of art, medicine, literature, psychology.

C. List as many Greek words for parts of the body as you can discover from the General Vocabulary, with at least one English derivative of each.

D. Re-form the hybrids *bicycle, hypersensitive, semicolon*, and *sociology* three times, using: (1) Greek elements only; (2) Latin elements only; and (3) English elements only.

E. Choose from the parentheses the word that correctly fits the context. Check your choice from the dictionary. Use the rejected word or words in a sentence.

1. Black is the (antithesis, metathesis, synthesis) of white.

2. (Metamorphosis, metempsychosis) is the transmigration of the soul into another body at death.

3. (Static, dynamic) energy is energy at rest.

4. His terse (epigraphic, epigrammatic) remarks were a constant source of delight.

5. The humble monk passed an uneventful (aesthetic, ascetic) existence in fasting and prayer.

6. The (epigraph, cenotaph, epitaph) on his tombstone read: "*Requiescat in Pace.*"

7. (Metonymy, antonomasia, metathesis) involves the naming of a thing by one of its attributes.

8. The Mormons once sanctioned (polyandry, polygamy) as a social institution.

9. The United States is an (autonomous, autocratic) state.

10. The chief task of anthropology is to study man's (ethnic, ethical) relationships.

11. *Paradise Lost* is a great (epic, didactic, bucolic) poem.

F. Determine the etymology, pronunciation, and meaning in its context of each word in the following sentences belonging to the classes of words studied in this chapter:

1. The greatest katabasis since Cyrus and his Greeks is that of the movie actors from Hollywood to the New York stage.

2. When the curt, pithy speaker misses the point entirely, a wordy prolegomenous babbler will often add three new offenses in the process of excusing one.

3. The blasphemous boasts and rascally conduct of Doctor Faustus made him a scandalous and interesting person.

4. The mannikins came in one at a time in their beautiful gowns with the air of smiling catalepsis, lifted their arms, revolved, and vanished.

G. State which words in the following list are linguistically related and what the nature of the relationship is: *anecdote, ballistics, biology, dialectical, dilemma, dose, economy, epilepsy, exodus, nemesis, optical, panorama, periodical, periscope, phonograph, skeptical, symbol, syntax, tactics, telegram.*

Vocabularies

Greek-English Vocabulary

[Words are listed according to parts of speech: first nouns, then adjectives, then verbs. Nouns, moreover, are listed according to declensions. Practices followed in the Special Vocabularies are also followed here (see Lessons 5 and 17).]

NOUNS

First Declension

agōnía contest, anguish
agorá market place, assembly
Akadémeia Academy (*garden near Athens in which Plato taught*)
akakía acacia
ákantha thorn
akmé point, prime
amoibé change
ánkyra anchor
arché rule
Arkadíá Arcadia (*name of a mountainous district in the Peloponnese*)
artéria windpipe, artery
basiliké royal porch, colonnade
chímaira she-goat, chimera
choléra jaundice, cholera
dáphnē laurel
dfkē justice
diphthéra tanned hide
dípsa thirst
dóxa opinion
eirōnefa dissimulation, assumed ignorance, irony

epoché stop, epoch
erēmítēs hermit
ergátēs worker
gángraina cancerous ulcer
gē earth
glóssa (*or glóttá*) tongue
gnómē maxim
gōnía angle
hédra seat
hēméra day
hērōínē demigoddess, heroine
historía inquiry, history
hýaina hyena
hýdra water snake, Hydra (*serpent slain by Hercules*)
hystéra womb
idiótēs private person, ignorant person
kánna reed
kardía heart
kathédra seat
kephalé head
kithára harp, cither
kólla glue
kónchē mussel, cockle
kórē maiden
krénē fountain
lépra leprosy

léthē forgetfulness, Lethe (*river of Hades*)
lýra lyre
mēchané machine
mélissa bee
mýrrha myrrh
nausía seasickness
naútēs seaman, sailor
nýmphē nymph, bride, young woman
odýnē pain
ōidē poem sung to music
oímē song, poem
orchēstra orchestra
paiónía peony
patriótēs fellow countryman
-pepsía cooking
pétrā stone
phantasía idea, notion
pharmakeía practice of the druggist
pherné bride's dowry
phiálē broad, flat vessel, phial
plēthórē fullness
pyrá place where fire (*pyr*) is kindled, pyre
rhodé rose bush
salámandra salamander
selénē moon, Selene (*goddess of the moon*)
sēsámē sesame (*a plant*)
Síbylla sibyl, prophetess
sophía skill, wisdom
speíra coil
speirafa meadowsweet, spiraea
spongiá sponge
stoá porch
stratēgia generalship
strophé turning
téchnē art
thékē case, box, chest

trápeza table
tyrannía lordship
zōé life
zónē girdle
zóion animal

Second Declension

adelphós brother
ákanthos acanthus
ánthrōpos man
apsínthion wormwood
árktos bear, Ursa Major
asphódelos king's-spear, asphodel
ástron star
atmós vapor
aulós flute
Bákchos Bacchus (*Greek god of wine*)
báktron (*baktēr-*) stick
bíos life
bolbós onion, bulb
bómbos humming sound
boukólos herdsman
chóndros cartilage
chrónos time
dáktylos finger, toe
dískos quoit
drómos course
élektron amber
empóron trading post, factory
Euémeros Euhemerus (*Sicilian author, ca. 316 B. C.*)
gánglion tumor
Geórgios George
geōrgós farmer
híppos horse
hóplon tool; (*plural*) arms
hyákinthos hyacinth
hýmnos song of praise

isthmós neck (of land), isthmus	pápyros aquatic plant used for paper, papyrus
káktos cardoon	pétalon leaf
kánastron wicker basket	pétros stone
karōtón carrot	phóbos fear
kéntauros centaur	phthongós voice, sound
kéramos pottery	pólemos war
kólon limb, clause	pólos pivot, axis, sky
kolossós gigantic statue	póros passage, port
kómos revelry	potamós river
kónos cone	proúnion plum
korállion coral	sákkos sack
kraníon skull	sandálion sandal
krokódeilos lizard, crocodile	sáppheiros lapis lazuli, sapphire
krókos saffron, crocus	sátyros satyr
krýstallos ice, crystal	saúros lizard
kýbos die, cube	seismós earthquake
kýmbalon cymbal	sítos food
labýrinthos maze	skándalon snare, stumbling block
laós people	stéphanos wreath, crown
líthos stone	stýlos pillar
lobós lobe	tálantron balance, that which is weighed in the balance, special aptitude
lótós lotus	Tántalos Tantalus (<i>son of Zeus and father of Pelops</i>)
mágos Persian priest, sorcerer	táphos tomb
mastós breast	thánatos death
Maúsólos Mausolus (<i>King of Caria in Asia Minor</i>)	théatron theater
métallon mine	theós god
Mouseíon temple of the Muses	thésaurós treasure
nárkissos narcissus	thrónos chair of state
nautílos seaman	tónos tone
nekrós corpse	trópaion trophy
nephρός kidney	trópos turning, turn
neúron nerve	týmpanon drum
nómos law	týphos smoke, cloud
obelós spit	týpos blow, stamp, pattern
oikos house	týrannos absolute ruler
ókeanós stream encircling the Earth, Atlantic Ocean	xénos stranger
ophthalmós eye	
ópion poppy juice, opium	

Third Declension

- aér, aéros** air
aigís, aigídos shield of Zeus (*or* Athena)
aión space of time, lifetime
aithér, aithéros upper air, ether
anér, andrós man
apsís, apsídos fastening, wheel, bow, arch
árōma, arómatos fragrance
Átlas, Átlantos Atlas (*Titan who supported the heavens*)
basileús king
básis step
báthos depth
cháos space, chasm
dekás, dekádos company of ten
dérma, dérmatos (*derm- or dermat-*) skin
dógma, dógmatos opinion
dryás, dryádos wood nymph
eídos form
eléphas, eléphantos elephant
ēós, ēōos dawn
gastér, gastrós stomach
génos (*gene-*) race, kind
gígas, gígantos giant
grámma, grámmatos thing written
haíma, haímatos (*haim- or haimat-*) blood
haíresis taking, choice
halkyón, halkyónos kingfisher
hēgemón, hēgemónos leader
Héllēn a Greek
hen one
hērōs, hērōos hero
hístōr, hístoros learned man
hýdōr (*hydr-*) water
ibis, íbidos ibis (*a bird*)
Iliás, Iliádos the *Iliad*
iris, íridos rainbow, Iris (*goddess of the rainbow*)
kállos beauty
kályx, kálykos case of a bud, calyx
kanón, kanónos rule, rod
klíma, klímatos slope, supposed slope of the earth, region
klimaktér round of a ladder
klímax, klímakos ladder, staircase, climax
kómma, kómmatos clause
kónōps, kónōpos mosquito
kýōn, kynós dog
lampás, lampádos lamp
lárynx, láryngos larynx
lynx, lynkós lynx
mainás, mainádos Bacchante, maenad
mántis prophet
mártyr witness
máthēma, mathématos science
méli honey
méninx, méníngos membrane enveloping the spinal chord
mētēr, mētrós mother
monás, monádos unit
myriás, myriádos 10,000
naíás, naíádos water nymph
naus ship
néktar drink of the gods
Néstōr, Néstoros Nestor (*aged and wise counselor in the Iliad*)
nomás, nomádos nomad
óasis fertile spot
ónyx, ónychos claw, fingernail, veined gem
oreiás, oreiádos mountain nymph
órnis, órnthos bird

óros mountain
Paián Paeon (*physician of the Gods, later Apollo*); song of triumph
Pallás, Palládos Pallas (*an epithet of Athena*)
Pan Pan (*Arcadian god of herds-men*)
pánthēr panther
patér, patrós father
páthos suffering
paúsis ceasing
pelekán water bird
phárynx, pháryngos throat, gullet
phásis appearance
phlégma, phlégmatos inflammation, phlegm
phlóx, phlogós flame; *name of a plant*
phōs, phōtós light
phrágma, phrágmatos fence
phrásis speech
phthégma, phthégmatos voice, speech
phýsis nature
pneúmōn, pneúmonos lung
poísis poem
pólis city
pósis drinking
pous, podós foot
pyr fire
pyramís, pyramídos pyramid
Pýthōn Python (*serpent slain by Apollo*)
rhétōr, rhétoros teacher of rhetoric
seirén siren
Sérapis Serapis (*Egyptian deity*)
spérma, spérmatos seed

Sphinx, Sphingós Sphinx (*she-monster*)
splēn spleen
sthénos strength
stigma, stigmatos brand
Styx, Stygós the Hateful River, the Styx (*river of Hades*)
sýrinx, sýringos (Pan's) pipe
tetrás, tetrádos tetrad
teúchos tool, book
thésis placing
thórax, thórakos chest, breast-plate
tígri, tígridos tiger
Titán Titan (*one of the primeval deities*)
triás, triádos triad

ADJECTIVES

áristos best
ásylos inviolable
barýs heavy, deep
brachýs short
deinós terrible
dolichós long
esóteros inner
glykýs sweet
gymnós naked
hágios saintly
héteros other
hierós sacred
hólos whole
homalós even
hómoios like, similar
homós same
kainós recent, new
kalós beautiful
kenós empty
koinós common
leukós white
makrós long

mésos middle
 mónos one, single, alone
 mórós dull
 orthós straight
 pachýs thick
 palaiós old
 platýs wide
 prótos first
 sophós wise
 stenós narrow
 thermós hot

VERBS

agōnízomai contend, struggle
 ainíssomai (ainig-) speak in
 riddles, hint
 akoúō (akous-) hear
 algéō feel pain
 askéō exercise
 athléō contend for a prize
 baínō (ba-) go
 baptízō dip in water
 báptō dip
 barbarízō behave or speak like a
 foreigner
 charássō (charak-) engrave
 cháskō (chas-) gape
 chiázō make the letter **chi**
 chōréō give place, go
 diaitáō diet
 didáskō (didak-) teach
 dokéō (dog-) seem
 ekklesiázō convene, summon to
 church
 eméō vomit
 enthousiázō be inspired
 gígnomai (gen- or gene-) be
 born, become
 gignóskō (gnō- or gnōs-) know
 glýphō (glyph- or glyp-) carve
 gráphō (graph- or gram-) write

gymnázō exercise naked
 hfēmi (e-) send
 idióomai make one's own
 kaíō (kau- or kaus-) burn
 keránnymi (kra-) mix
 kláō (klas-) break
 klýzō wash
 koimáō put to sleep
 komáō wear long hair
 krínō (kri-) judge
 leípō leave
 miméomai imitate
 némō (neme- or nom-) deal out,
 arrange, manage, feed
 oxýnō (oxys-) sharpen
 páschō (path- or pathē-) suffer,
 feel, experience
 pémpō (pomp-) send
 phantázō cause to appear
 philéō love
 phlégō burn
 phōnéō speak
 phýō grow
 píptō (ptō-) fall
 planáomai wander
 plássō (plas-) mould
 pleonázō be more than enough,
 abound
 pléssō (plēk-) strike
 poiéō make, compose
 prízō saw
 rheumatízō flow, suffer from a
 flux
 sarkázō tear flesh like a dog
 bite the lips in anger, speak
 bitterly
 schízō split
 scholázō have leisure, keep a
 school
 sépō rot, decay
 skéllō (skele-) dry up

sképtō (skēp-) support	témnō (tom-) cut
sophízō act wisely, instruct	theáomai (thea-) behold
spáō (spas-) draw, cause a con- vulsion	theōréō view
speírō (spor-) sow seeds	therapeúō wait on
stízō (stig-) brand	títhēmi (the-) place
stréphō (stroph-) turn	tréchō (troch-) run
stýphō (styp-) contract	trépō (trop-) turn
teínō (ton-) stretch	tríbō rub
	týptō (typ-) strike

English-Greek Vocabulary

act wisely <i>sophízō</i>	boil <i>zéō</i>
adorn <i>kosméō</i>	bone <i>ostéon</i>
afar <i>téle</i>	book <i>biblíon</i>
again <i>meta-</i> , <i>met-</i>	break <i>kláō</i> (<i>klas-</i>)
against <i>anti-</i> , <i>ant-</i>	breast <i>thórax</i> , <i>thórakos</i>
all <i>pas</i> (<i>pan-</i> or <i>pant-</i>)	bring good news <i>euangelizomai</i>
ally <i>sýmmachos</i>	burn <i>kafō</i> (<i>kau-</i> or <i>kaus-</i>)
amber <i>élektron</i>	carve <i>glýphō</i> (<i>glyph-</i> or <i>glyph-</i>)
angel <i>ángelos</i>	center <i>kéntron</i>
angle <i>gōnía</i>	character <i>éthos</i>
angled <i>-gōnos</i>	child <i>pais</i> , <i>paidós</i>
another: one — <i>allélos</i>	circle <i>kýklos</i>
appear <i>phantázō</i>	city <i>pólis</i>
arm <i>brachíōn</i> , <i>brachíonos</i>	collection of <i>-logia</i>
around <i>peri-</i>	color <i>chróma</i> , <i>chrómatos</i>
arrange <i>tássō</i> (<i>tak-</i>)	(<i>chrōm-</i> or <i>chrōmat-</i>)
arrangement <i>-nomia</i>	contend <i>agōnizomai</i>
art of writing (or describing)	contrary to <i>para-</i> , <i>par-</i>
<i>-graphia</i>	cooking <i>-pepsia</i>
away from <i>apo-</i> , <i>ap-</i>	corpse <i>nekrós</i>
back <i>ana-</i> , <i>an-</i>	custom <i>éthos</i>
bad <i>dys-</i>	cut <i>témnō</i> (<i>tom-</i>)
battle <i>-machia</i>	cutting (of) <i>-tomia</i>
bear <i>phérō</i> (<i>pher-</i> or <i>phor-</i>)	day <i>hēméra</i>
beautify <i>kosméō</i>	descendant of <i>-itēs</i>
before <i>pro-</i>	disease of <i>-patheia</i>
belief in <i>-logia</i>	divination by <i>-manteia</i>
below <i>hypo-</i> , <i>hyp-</i>	doctrine of <i>-ismos</i>
beside <i>para-</i> , <i>par-</i>	dog <i>kýōn</i> , <i>kynós</i>
best <i>áristos</i>	double <i>dis</i> ; <i>di-</i>
beyond <i>hyper-</i>	down <i>kata-</i> , <i>kat-</i>
blood <i>haíma</i> , <i>haímatos</i> (<i>haim-</i> or <i>haimat-</i>)	draw <i>spáō</i> (<i>spas-</i>)
	earth <i>gē</i>

eating -phagos
 empty kenós
 entire hólos
 eye ophthalmós; ōps, ōpós
 fall píptō (ptō-)
 false pseudés
 fear of -phobia
 feel aisthánomai (aisthē-); pás-
 clō (path- or pathē-)
 feeling páthos
 few olígos
 fire pyr
 first prótos
 fit for -tikos
 five pénte; penta-
 flesh sarx, sarkós
 flower ánthos; ánthemon
 food sítos
 foot pous, podós
 for epi-, ep-
 form (*noun*) morphé
 form (*verb*) morphōō
 four téssares; tetra-
 gather légō (log- or lek-)
 giant gígas, gíganos
 gigantic statue kolossós
 give dídōmi (do-)
 go chōrēō
 god theós
 gold chrysós
 good eu-; bring — news euange-
 lízomai
 great mégas (mega- or megal-)
 ground: on the — chamaf
 grow phyō
 half hēmi-
 harmony harmonía
 head kephalé
 heat(ed) thermós
 heavy barýs
 holy hierós

honor timé
 horse híppos
 house oíkos
 hymn hýmnos
 idol eídōlon
 image eikón, eikónos
 in en-, em-, el-
 inclined to -tikos
 inflammation of -itis
 instrument for measuring métron
 instrument for observing -skopos
 instrument for recording -gra-
 phos
 judge krínō (kri-)
 know gignóskō (gnō- or gnōs-)
 law nómos; -nomia
 lead ágō (agog-)
 leave leípō
 leisure scholé
 light phōs, phōtós
 like -oeidés
 lion léōn, léontos
 little -iskos; -ion
 lizard saúros
 long makrós
 look at horáō (hora- or op-)
 loosen lýō
 love of phílos; phil-
 lover of -philos
 loving phílos; phil-
 lung pneúmōn, pneúmonos
 madness manía
 make poiéō
 make into -izō
 man ánthrōpos; anér, andrós
 mankind -anthrōpia
 many polýs (poly-)
 marriage gámos; -gamia
 martyr mártyr
 Mausolus Maúsōlos (*King of*
 Caria, in Asia Minor)

- measure *métron*
 measurement *-metria*
 meat *sarx, sarkós*
 mix *keránnymi (kra-)*
 mob *óchlos*
 mother *mētēr, mētrós*
 mould *plássō (plas-)*
 move *kinéō*
 Muse *Móusa*
 name *ónoma, onómatos (onym-
 or onomat-)*
 narrow *stenós*
 nature *phýsis; éthos*
 nerve *neúron*
 new *néos*
 news: bring good — *euangeli-
 zomai*
 North Wind *Boréas*
 of *-ikos*
 off *apo-, ap-*
 on *epi-, ep-*
 one hen
 one another *allélos*
 one who *-tēs*
 opinion *dóxa*
 out (of) *ek-, ex-*
 over *hyper-*
 Pan *Pan (Arcadian god of herds-
 men)*
 parish *paroikía*
 people *démos*
 perceive *aisthánomai (aisthē-)*
 pertaining to *-ikos*
 pipe *aulós*
 place *títhēmi (the-); — for -eion,
 -aion*
 porch *stoá*
 rhythm *rhythmos*
 rock *pétros*
 root *étymon*
 rule (by) *arché; -archia; -kratía*
- sacred *hierós*
 say *phēmí; phrázō*
 science of *-logia*
 science of describing *-graphia*
 see *horáō (hora- or op-)*
 seize *lambánō (lēp- or lēm-)*
 send *stéllō (stol-)*
 sensation *aisthēsis*
 sense *aisthánomai (aisthē-)*
 shape *morphē*
 sign *séma, sématos (sēm- or
 sēmat-)*
 single *mónos*
 six *hex; hexa-*
 skin *dérma, dérmatos (derm- or
 dermat-)*
 small *mikrós*
 soul *psyché*
 sound *phōné*
 Spartan *Lákōn*
 speak *phēmí; phrázō*
 spit *obelós*
 star *ástron; astér, astéros*
 statue: gigantic — *kolossós*
 step (*noun*) *básis*
 step (*verb*) *baínō (ba-)*
 stomach *gastér, gastrós*
 stone *lithos*
 study of *-logia*
 suffer *páschō (path- or pathē-)*
 sun *hélios*
 supporter of *-kratēs*
 swallowing *-phagos*
 take *lambánō (lēp- or lēm-)*
 talk *phrázō*
 teach *didáskō (didak-)*
 terrible *deinós*
 that which *-tēs; tēr*
 thick *pachýs*
 three *treis; tri-*
 throat *lárynx, laryngos*

throw bállō (ball-, bol- or blē-) time chrónos to epi- , ep- together syn- , sym- , syl- , sys- tomb táphos tone tónos tongue glóssa (or glótta); glóttis toward epi- , ep- treatment of (or by) -patheia turn trépō (trop-) two dis ; di- under hypo- , hyp- up ana- , an- upon epi- , ep- upward ana- , an-	walk patéō war -machia water hýdōr (hydr-) way hodós wealth ploútos weight báros wind: North Wind Boréas wise sophós wisely: act — sophízō with syn- , sym- , syl- , sys- without a- , an- word lógos worship latreía worshipper -latrēs write gráphō (graph- or gram-) writing -graphos ; -graphia
---	---

Index

PART ONE—LATIN

A

- Adjective bases:
 plus adjective-forming suffixes, 65-78
 plus noun-forming suffixes, 86-92
Adjective-forming suffixes:
 with noun or adjective bases:
 —*al*, 65
 —*an*, 68
 —*ane*, 68
 —*ar*, 65
 —*ary*, 65, 71-72
 —*ic*, 76
 —*il*, 68
 —*ile*, 68
 —*in*, 71
 —*ine*, 71
 —*lent*, 75
 —*ose*, 75
 —*ous*, 75
 with verb bases:
 —*acious*, 159
 —*ble*, 158
 —*id*, 159
 —*ile*, 159
 —*ive*, 162-163
 —*ory*, 162
 —*ulous*, 159
Adjectives:
 comparison of, 52-53
 compound, *see* Compound adjectives
 first- and second-declension, 37-38
 third-declension, 52
Adverbs, 56-57
Anglo-French, 11-12
Anglo-Saxon invasions of Britain, 8-10
Asterisk, meaning of, 14

B

- Base, definition of, 18
Bibliographical notice, xv-xvi

C

- Cases of Latin declensions, 17
Cognates, 6
Comparison of adjectives, 52-53
Compound adjectives:
 from noun or adjective bases, 65-78
 from verb bases, 158-165
Compound nouns:
 from adjective bases, 86-92
 from noun bases, 82-92
 from verb bases, 147-157
Compounds, multiple-base, *see* Multiple-base compounds
Conjugations of Latin verbs, 103
Connecting vowel, 75
Contact, historical, between Latin and English, 7-14
Current meaning, 63-64

D

- Declensions of Latin nouns, 17, 19, 29, 33, 45, 46, 56
Denominative verbs, 107
Deponent verbs, 115
Diminutive nouns, 82-83
Doublets, 14-15

E

- English-Latin vocabulary, 181-183
Etymological meaning, 63-64

F

- Fifth-declension nouns, 56
 First- and second-declension adjectives, 37-38
 Anglicized, 41
 borrowed without change, 38
 First-declension nouns, 19
 Anglicized, 23-28
 borrowed without change, 19
 Fourth-declension nouns, 56
 Frequentative verbs, 124

G

- Gender of Latin nouns, 17-18
 Generalization of meaning, 42
 Gerundive:
 formation of, 143
 in English, 143-144

H

- Historical contact between Latin and English, 7-14
 Hybrids, 14

I

- Inceptive verbs, 140
 Indo-European, 4-6
 Inheritance words, 6
 Instructions on procedure, xiii-xv
 Introduction of Roman Christianity in Britain, 10-11
 Invasions of Britain:
 Anglo-Saxon, 8-10
 Roman, 7-8

L

- Latin element in English, 6-7
 Latin-English vocabulary, 173-180
 Latin pronunciation, 169-170
 Linguistic relationship between Latin and English, 4-6
 Loan words, 6

M

- Meaning:
 current and etymological, 63-64
 specialization and generalization of, 41-42

Multiple-base compounds—dependent compounds:

- cide*, 163
 —*colous*, 126
 —*culture*, 156
 —*faction*, 148
 —*fer*, 125
 —*ferous*, 125
 —*fic*, 149
 —*fication*, 148
 —*fice*, 149
 —*fy*, 148
 —*igate*, 126
 present participle in, 140
 —*vora*, 125-126
 —*vore*, 126
 —*vorous*, 125

Multiple-base compounds—descriptive compounds, 93

N

- Norman conquest, 11-12
 Norman-French, 11-12
 Noun bases:
 plus adjective-forming suffixes, 65-78
 plus noun-forming suffixes, 82-92
 Noun-forming suffixes:
 with adjective bases:
 —*ice*, 90
 —*itude*, 87
 —*ity*, 86-87
 with noun bases:
 —*ate*, 86
 diminutive-forming suffixes, 82-83
 with noun or adjective bases:
 —*arium*, 72
 —*ary*, 72
 —*ia*, 90-91
 —*ism*, 91
 —*ist*, 91
 —*mony*, 90
 —*y*, 90-91
 with verb bases:
 —*ble*, 152-153
 —*cle*, 152-153
 —*ion*, 147-148

Noun-forming suffixes (*Cont.*):with verb bases (*Cont.*):

- men*, 152
- ment*, 152
- or*, 153, 155
- orium*, 162
- ory*, 162
- ress*, 155
- rix*, 155
- ure*, 156

Nouns:

- fifth-declension, 56
- first-declension, 19
- fourth-declension, 56
- second-declension, 29, 33
- third-declension, 45-46

Nouns, compound, *see* Compound nouns

Numerals, 94-95

O

Old French, 12-13

P

Perfect-participial base:

- formation of, 105
- plus adjective-forming suffixes, 158-165
- plus noun-forming suffixes, 147-151, 155-157

Perfect participle, 104-105

- derivative adjectives from, 106
- derivative nouns from, 120
- derivative verbs from, 107

Prefixes:

- with nouns, 79
- with verbs, 111-123

Prepositions:

- cases governed by, 79-80
- in phrases, 79-80

Present infinitive, 103-104

- derivative nouns from, 119
- derivative verbs from, 106

Present-infinitive base:

- formation of, 104
- plus adjective-forming suffixes, 158-161
- plus noun-forming suffixes, 147-154

Present participle:

- abstract nouns from, 136
- formation of, 132-133
- in English, 133

Procedure, instructions on, xiii-xv

Pronunciation of Latin, 169-170

R

Relationship, linguistic, between Latin and English, 4-6

Review, 60-61, 98-101, 129-131, 166-168

Revival of Learning, 13-14

Romance languages, 5-6

Roman Christianity, introduction of in Britain, 10-11

Roman invasions of Britain, 7-8

S

Second-declension nouns:

- masculine, 29
- neuter, 33

Semantics, definition of, 41

Specialization of meaning, 41-42

Suffixes, *see* Adjective-forming suffixes, Noun-forming suffixes

T

Third-declension adjectives, 52

Third-declension nouns, 45-46

Anglicized, 49

borrowed without change, 46

V

Verb bases:

- plus adjective-forming suffixes, 158-165
- plus noun-forming suffixes, 147-157

Verbs:

- denominative, 107
- deponent, 115
- derivative adjectives from, 106
- derivative nouns from, 119-120
- derivative verbs from, 106-107
- frequentative, 124
- gerundive of, 143
- inceptive, 140
- perfect participle of, 104-105
- present infinitive of, 103-104
- present participle of, 132-133

Vowel, connecting, 75

Vulgar Latin, 5-6

Index

PART TWO—GREEK

- A
- Adjective bases:
 plus adjective-forming suffixes,
 235-236
 plus noun-forming suffixes, 223-
 224, 232-233
 plus verb-forming suffixes, 236
Adjective-forming suffixes:
 with noun or adjective bases:
 —*ic*, 235
 —*oid*, 236
 with verb bases:
 —*tic*, 260
Adjectives, 215
Adjectives, compound, *see* Compound
 adjectives
Adjectives, verbal, 260
Alphabet, Greek, 189-191
- B
- Breathings, 191
- C
- Compound adjectives:
 from noun or adjective bases, 235-
 236
 from verb bases, 260
Compound nouns:
 from noun or adjective bases, 223-
 224, 232-233
 from verb bases, 250-259
Compound verbs:
 formed with prefixes, 245
 from noun or adjective bases, 236
Compounds, multiple-base, *see* Mul-
 tiple-base compounds
Contact, historical, between Greek
 and English, 188-189
- D
- Declensions of Greek nouns, 195, 202,
 208
Diphthongs, 191
- E
- English-Greek vocabulary, 277-280
- F
- First-declension nouns, 195
 feminine, 195-201
 masculine, 199-201
- G
- Greek alphabet, 189-191
Greek-English vocabulary, 269-276
Greek pronunciation, 190-191
- H
- Historical contact between Greek and
 English, 188-189
- L
- Linguistic relationship between Greek
 and Latin, 187-188
- M
- Multiple-base compounds:
 adjectives in, 215
 —*cracy*, 236
 —*crat*, 236
 —*gram*, 257-258
 —*graph*, 257-258
 —*graphy*, 257-258
 —*later*, 211-212
 —*latry*, 211-212
 —*logy*, 246
 —*mancy*, 227
 —*mania*, 196
 —*meter*, 206
 —*metry*, 206
 —*nomy*, 202-203
 numerals in, 218
 —*pathy*, 250-251
 —*phil*, 203

Multiple-base compounds (*Cont.*):

- phile*, 203
- phobia*, 196
- phone*, 199
- scope*, 251
- tomy*, 246

N

Noun bases:

- plus adjective-forming suffixes, 235–236
- plus noun-forming suffixes, 223–224, 232–233
- plus verb-forming suffixes, 236

Noun-forming suffixes:

with noun or adjective bases:

- um*, 232–233
- ia*, 223
- isk*, 232
- ism*, 223
- ist*, 224
- ite*, 233
- itis*, 233
- ium*, 232
- y*, 223

with verb bases:

- m*, 257
- ma*, 257
- me*, 257
- se*, 254
- sis*, 254
- sy*, 254
- t*, 250
- te*, 250
- ter*, 250, 254
- tery*, 254
- tes*, 250

Nouns:

- first-declension, 195
- second-declension, 202
- third-declension, 208

Nouns, compound, *see* Compound nouns

Numerals, 218

P

Prefixes:

- with nouns or adjectives, 224–231
- with verbs, 245

Pronunciation of Greek, 190–191

R

- Relationship, linguistic, between Greek and Latin, 187–188
- Review, 220–221, 239–241, 264–266

S

Second-declension nouns, 202

masculine, 202

neuter, 206

- Suffixes, *see* Adjective-forming suffixes, Noun-forming suffixes, Verb-forming suffixes

T

Third-declension nouns, 208

ending in —*an*, 211—*ar*, 213—*as*, 208–209—*en*, 211—*er*, 213—*is*, 208–209, 213—*ma*, 211—*on*, 211—*or*, 213—*os*, 213—*x*, 208—*yr*, 213

Transliteration:

of Greek into English, 191–192

of Greek into Latin, 192–193

V

Verbal adjectives, 260

Verb bases:

formation of, 243–244

plus adjective-forming suffixes, 260

plus noun-forming suffixes, 250–259

Verb-forming suffixes:

—*ize*, 236

Verbs:

compounded with prefixes, 245

first person singular, present indicative endings, 243–244

formation of base of, 243–244

in English, 246

present-infinitive endings, 244

Verbs, compound, *see* Compound verbs

